

**ARMY TRAINING AND
EVALUATION PROGRAM
NO. 7-8-MTP**

**HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, DC, 29 September 1994**

MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE INFANTRY RIFLE PLATOON AND SQUAD

CONTENTS

| | Page |
|--|------------|
| PREFACE | v |
| CHAPTER 1. UNIT TRAINING | |
| 1-1. General | 1-1 |
| 1-2. Supporting Material | 1-1 |
| 1-3. Definitions | 1-2 |
| 1-4. Contents | 1-2 |
| 1-5. Operations and Tasks | 1-3 |
| 1-6. Training Principles | 1-3 |
| 1-7. Training Strategy | 1-5 |
| 1-8. Conduct of Training | 1-6 |
| 1-9. Battle Focus | 1-7 |
| 1-10. Safety | 1-7 |
| 1-11. Evaluation | 1-7 |
| 1-12. Feedback | 1-8 |

**DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION—Approved for public release;
distribution is unlimited.**

***This publication supersedes ARTEP 7-8-MTP, 30 September 1988.**

| | Page |
|--|-------------|
| CHAPTER 2. TRAINING MATRIXES | |
| 2-1. General | 2-1 |
| 2-2. Battlefield Operating Systems | 2-1 |
| 2-3. Training Matrix Description | 2-2 |
| 2-4. Training Matrix 1: Operation-to-Collective Task Matrix | 2-2 |
| 2-5. Training Matrix 2: Publication Reference-to-Collective Task Matrix | 2-2 |
| 2-6. Training Matrix 3: Battle Drill-to-Collective Task Matrix | 2-3 |
| CHAPTER 3. OPERATION OUTLINES | |
| 3-1. General | 3-1 |
| 3-2. Relationship of Operation Outlines to Training Matrixes | 3-1 |
| 3-3. Relationship of Operation Outlines to STX(s) | 3-2 |
| 3-4. Use of Operation Outline | 3-2 |
| 3-5. Condition Statement | 3-3 |
| CHAPTER 4. TRAINING EXERCISES | |
| 4-1. General | 4-1 |
| 4-2. Situational Training Exercise | 4-1 |
| CHAPTER 5. TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES | |
| 5-1. General | 5-1 |
| 5-2. Structure | 5-1 |
| 5-3. Format | 5-1 |
| 5-4. Use | 5-3 |
| Maneuver | 5-7—5-147 |
| Fire Support | 5-148—5-152 |
| Intelligence | 5-153—5-171 |
| Mobility and Survivability | 5-172—5-208 |
| Air Defense | 5-209—5-211 |
| Combat Service Support | 5-212—5-226 |
| Command and Control | 5-227—5-245 |

| | Page |
|---|------|
| CHAPTER 6. EXTERNAL EVALUATION | |
| Section I. Introduction | 6-1 |
| 6-1. General | 6-1 |
| 6-2. Purpose | 6-1 |
| Section II. Management of the Evaluation | 6-1 |
| 6-3. General | 6-1 |
| 6-4. Plan the Evaluation | 6-1 |
| 6-5. Management of Time and Personnel | 6-2 |
| Section III. Preparation of the Evaluation | 6-3 |
| 6-6. General | 6-3 |
| 6-7. Specific Preparation Requirements | 6-3 |
| Section IV. Evaluator Requirements, Training, and Scoring System | 6-5 |
| 6-8. General | 6-5 |
| 6-9. Evaluator Requirements | 6-6 |
| 6-10. Evaluator Training | 6-6 |
| 6-11. Evaluator Scoring System | 6-7 |
| Section V. Opposing Force Selection and Training | 6-13 |
| 6-12. General | 6-13 |
| 6-13. Selection | 6-13 |
| 6-14. Training | 6-13 |
| 6-15. Opposing Force Strength | 6-13 |
| Section VI. Conduct of the Evaluation | 6-14 |
| 6-16. General | 6-14 |
| 6-17. Preevaluation Activities | 6-14 |
| 6-18. Evaluation Activities | 6-14 |
| 6-19. Postevaluation Activities | 6-16 |
| Section VII. After-Action Review | 6-16 |
| 6-20. General | 6-16 |
| 6-21. Preparation | 6-17 |
| 6-22. Conduct of the After-Action Review | 6-18 |

| | Page |
|---|------------------------|
| Section VII. Evaluation Scenario Development | 6-19 |
| 6-23. General | 6-19 |
| 6-24. Reaction-Type Missions | 6-19 |
| 6-25. Terrain | 6-19 |
| Section IX. Indirect-Fire Simulation | 6-25 |
| 6-26. General | 6-25 |
| 6-27. Evaluation Control Headquarters Method | 6-25 |
| 6-28. Realism | 6-26 |
| 6-29. Simulation Without OPFOR | 6-26 |
| APPENDIX A. SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS | A-1 |
| GLOSSARY | .Glossary-1 |
| REFERENCES | References-1 |
| QUESTIONNAIRE | Questionnaire-1 |

PREFACE

This mission training plan provides a descriptive, performance-oriented training program to assist leaders in training their units. Performance measures for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered. This MTP is IAW the U.S. Army training and tactical doctrine. This MTP contains those tasks that support the unit missions outlined in the doctrinal manuals. Unit leaders must use higher headquarters METL and training guidance to identify which tasks in the MTP must be emphasized. Task performance measures in this MTP are the Army's performance measures for executing those tasks.

This MTP applies to all infantry, light infantry, airborne, air assault, and ranger platoons and squads organized under TOEs 07-075L000, 07-017L000, 07-037L000, and 07-057L000, 07-087L000.

The proponent for this publication is the United States Army Infantry School. Send comments and recommendations on DA Form 2028 directly to the Commandant, U.S. Army Infantry School, ATTN: ATSH-OTT-T, Fort Benning, GA 31905-5593.

Unless otherwise stated, whenever the masculine gender is used, both men and women are included.

CHAPTER 1

UNIT TRAINING

1-1. GENERAL

This MTP provides the infantry platoon and squad leaders with a tactical training and evaluation program for the platoon and squad. It also provides guidance on how to train as well as the key operations on which to train. The specific details of the training program depend on many factors, including—

- The unit's METL.
- Training directives and guidance established by the chain of command.
- Training priorities for the platoon and squad.
- Training resources and areas available.

1-2. SUPPORTING MATERIAL

This MTP describes a critical wartime operation-oriented platoon training program, which is part of the company's training program. The company's training program consists of the company-level MTP (ARTEP 7-10-MTP) and also includes drills, soldier tasks, and leader tasks (Figure 1-1).

- Infantry drills** (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL). The platoon and squad leaders use drills to train skills that the unit must sustain.
- Soldier tasks.** Units use the soldier's manuals for the appropriate MOS and skill levels to train individual tasks.
- Leader tasks.** Units use the MQS II manual to train platoon leaders.

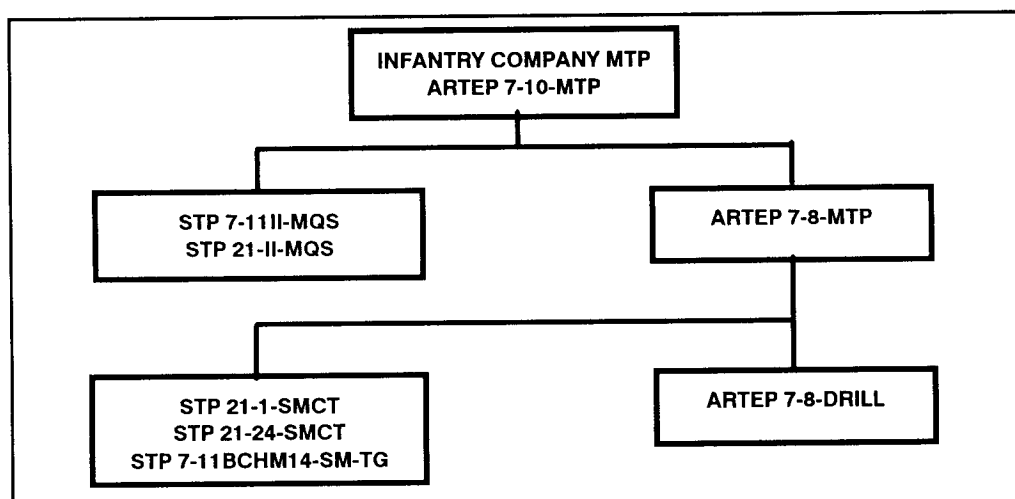


Figure 1-1. MTP echelon relationship.

1-3. DEFINITIONS

The terms **mission** and **operation** are frequently used throughout this manual. These terms must be understood.

a. According to FM 101-5-1, a mission and an operation are defined as follows:

(1) A *mission* is “The primary task assigned to an individual, unit, or force. It usually contains the elements of who, what, when, where, and the reason therefore [why], but seldom specifies how.”

(2) An *operation* is “A military action or the carrying out of a strategic, tactical service, training, or administrative military mission; the process of carrying on combat, including movement, supply, attack, defense, and maneuvers needed to gain the objectives of any battle or campaign.”

b. Examples of operations in infantry doctrine are movement to contact (offensive), attack (offensive), delay (retrograde), and defend (defensive). These operations become a mission when the five elements of who, what when, where, and why are employed. For example, an attack operation becomes a mission when situation specific information is provided, such as A Company attacks to seize Objective RAMBO in the vicinity of LA059699 NLT 231200Dec93 to prevent the enemy from reinforcing Objective JANE.

1-4. CONTENTS

This MTP contains six chapters.

a. **Chapter 1**, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. Chapter 1 explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. **Chapter 2**, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between operations and collective tasks.

c. **Chapter 3**, Operation Outlines, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between critical wartime operations and subtasks inherent to those operations.

d. **Chapter 4**, Training Exercises, consists of FTXs and STXs that combine with leader training activities to aid in training the platoon’s critical operations and tasks. FTXs and STXs provide training information and a scenario to aid in sustaining the training of an operation. It may also serve as part of an internal or external evaluation of the platoon executing the operation in a tactical setting.

e. **Chapter 5**, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training criteria for tasks that the platoon and squads must master to perform their critical wartime operations. These training criteria orient on the levels of collective training executed by the platoon. Each T&EO can be applicable

to one or more operations. In various combinations, the T&EOs make up larger training exercises such as the FTXs and STXs in Chapter 4.

f. **Chapter 6**, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

1-5. OPERATIONS AND TASKS

The platoon's critical wartime operations are movement to contact, attack, raid, ambush, reconnaissance and security, defend, and retrograde. Each operation includes major activities that the platoon must execute to accomplish a certain mission. It also includes the tasks that each squad and soldier must perform. Each of these tasks requires training.

a. Platoon tasks may be trained individually or jointly. They must be oriented on the training criteria provided in the T&EOs and drills. Drills and collective task T&EOs can be linked through a logical, tactical scenario to form an STX. Although an STX is mission-oriented, it will not, by itself, result in training to mission proficiency. Various combinations of STXs can be used in developing an FTX. Several STXs can be used for an external evaluation (designed by battalion headquarters) of a platoon's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

b. Squad tasks are trained the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in ARTEP 7-8-DRILL.

c. Leader tasks are individual tasks trained by using—

- Tactical exercises without troops.
- Battle simulations.
- Execution of platoon missions.
- Officer and or NCO professional development training based on MQS/STP tasks respectively.

d. Individual tasks are mastered through training to standards outlined in MQS manuals and STPs. At the end of each collective task T&EO in Chapter 5, the individual tasks are listed that support successful collective performance.

1-6. TRAINING PRINCIPLES

This MTP is based on the training principles in FM 25-series of manuals.

a. **Train as a combined arms and service team.** Today's Army doctrine requires combined arms and services teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms and services operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when teams train together.

Leaders must regularly practice cross attachment of the full wartime spectrum of combat, combat support, and combat service support units.

b. **Train as you fight.** The goal of combat-level training is to achieve combat-level standards. Every effort must be made to attain this difficult goal. Within the confines of safety and common sense, leaders must accept less than perfect results initially and demand realism in training. They must integrate such realistic conditions as smoke, noise, simulated NBC, battlefield debris, loss of key leaders, and inclement weather.

c. **Use appropriate doctrine.** Units must train on peacetime training tasks to the Army standards in mission training plans, drill books, soldier's manuals, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications. Doctrine should be the training baseline. On occasion, slight changes may be required to adapt to the situation.

d. **Use performance-oriented training.** Units become proficient in the performance of critical tasks and operations by practicing the tasks and missions. Soldiers learn best by doing, using a hands-on approach. Leaders are responsible for developing and executing a training strategy that provides these opportunities. All training assets and resources (to include simulators, simulations, and training devices) must be included in the strategy.

e. **Train to challenge.** Tough, realistic, intellectually, and physically challenging training excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Challenging training inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn.

f. **Train to sustain proficiency.** Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to sustain that level. MTPs and ITEPs are tools to help achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.

g. **Train using multiechelon techniques.** To use available time and resources most effectively, commanders must simultaneously train individuals, leaders, and units at each echelon in the organization.

h. **Train to maintain.** Maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Maintenance training designed to keep equipment in the fight is as equally important to soldiers as being experts in its use. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment in a high state of readiness in support of training or combat employment.

i. **Make commanders the primary trainers.** The leaders in the chain of command are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organization.

1-7. TRAINING STRATEGY

The training program developed and executed by the infantry platoon or squad is based on the infantry component of the Army's combined arms training strategy (CATS). The CATS provides direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. The CATS also provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to the CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the types of training events and the resources required to facilitate training to standard.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with descriptive lists for training. These strategies reflect an optimal way to train to standard. However, all units in the Army probably do not have the same resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The infantry platoon and squad training strategy provides a means for training the platoon and squad to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. Training strategies provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. The infantry platoon and squad training strategy consists of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the platoon and squad to train to standard. The elements of the infantry platoon and squad training strategy are maneuver, gunnery, and soldier.

(1) *Maneuver strategy*. The maneuver strategy provides a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) *Gunnery strategy*. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems in the unit, and it provides an annual training plan and depicts resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy come from the STRAC manual or appropriate field manual. As a subset of the gunnery strategy, a training strategy is developed for each individual and crew-served weapon in the Army inventory.

(3) *Soldier strategy*. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train the soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more complex or resource intensive training event or task. Training events follow the crawl,

walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of his soldiers, or unit(s), to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the unit's METL, and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status, will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. When developing the platoon's and squad's training plan, the commander identifies the training tasks from the MTP required to support his METL. Then, using training strategies, the commander develops a battle-focused training plan by integrating and linking METL-derived MTP training tasks with CATS training events.

1-8. CONDUCT OF TRAINING

This MTP aids in planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in the FM 25-series.

a. The company commander assigns missions and tasks based on his METL and the battalion commander's training guidance. Trainers must plan and execute platoon training in support of this guidance.

b. The operation outlines in Chapter 3 must support the company commander's guidance. If they do not or need to be modified, a review of the matrix in Chapter 2 will identify all critical collective tasks that the platoon or squad must master to perform a specific mission.

c. The platoon and squad leaders must determine the priority of all tasks. Leaders will never have time to train everything and must orient on the greatest challenges and most difficult sustainment skills. The platoon leader should hold weekly training meetings with his platoon sergeant and squad leaders in order to analyze and prioritize training.

d. Training tasks must be integrated into the training schedule. The following procedures are used to do this:

- List the tasks in the priority and frequency they need to be trained.
- Determine the required training time.
- Determine the best procedure for using multiechelon training for the best effect.
- Determine the training location(s).
- Determine the training responsibilities (who will be responsible for what).

- Determine the time needed for training.
- Determine the best training method.
- Determine the resources needed to train the selected tasks.

e. Platoon leaders provide these training requirements to their company commander. Once the commander has approved the lists, he must add them to the company training schedule.

f. Leaders must keep subordinate leaders informed of training they are conducting. Standards must be rigidly enforced. If they are not, the unit and soldiers will suffer.

1-9. BATTLE FOCUS

Battle focus derives peacetime training requirements from wartime operations. It guides the planning, execution, and assessment of the platoon's and squad's training programs to ensure the unit trains as it is going to fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the entire training process. Commanders use it to allocate resources for training based on wartime operation requirements. Also, commanders can recognize that a unit cannot attain proficiency to standard on every task due to time or resource constraints. A successful training program is achievable, however, by narrowing the focus to a reduced number of vital tasks that are essential to mission accomplishment.

1-10. SAFETY

A well-trained unit is normally accident-free, although accidents can occur through no fault of the soldier or equipment operator. Most accidents result from inadequately trained, unsupervised, or complacent personnel.

a. Leaders must stress situational awareness. Effective training occurs when soldiers are confident in their abilities to perform their task to standard to include the appropriate safety standards. Leaders must ensure that all soldiers comply with unit safety SOPs during training events. Leaders should make on-the-spot corrections when an unsafe act is observed.

b. Using the safety checklists of the US Army Safety Center, Fort Rucker, Alabama, enhance the overall safety practices of soldiers during training.

1-11. EVALUATION

The T&EOs in Chapter 5 list the standards that the platoon and squad must meet for each task.

a. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels and must be inherent at all levels. External evaluations

are formal, and they are usually conducted by the headquarters two levels above the unit.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is performed. Simultaneous training and evaluation are the basis for the ARTEP concept. Every training exercise provides the potential for evaluation, and every evaluation is a training session. To optimize training, the platoon or squad leader must restate to the trainers and leaders the necessity for continuous training evaluation.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. Outside evaluators usually make this unfeasible for higher-level exercises. Leaders should plan AARs at frequent and logical intervals during exercises. This allows the platoon or squad leader to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind, and this also prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

NOTE: FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-12. FEEDBACK

Recommendations for improvement of this ARTEP MTP are requested. Feedback will help ensure that this ARTEP MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Send comments on DA Form 2028 to the address listed in the Preface.

CHAPTER 2

TRAINING MATRIXES**2-1. GENERAL**

This chapter provides training matrixes that help the platoon training manager in near-term planning and development of long-range training plans, short-range training plans, and training schedules. The matrixes complement battle-focused training. They provide an organized set of relationships that support the platoon trainer's job.

a. As discussed in Chapter 1, unit proficiency requires a foundation of individual tasks (Skill Levels 1 through 4). The most important individual tasks are those that are critical to the collective tasks.

b. Once individual tasks have been trained to standard, they must be integrated and sustained through collective task training. These collective tasks are the T&EOs in Chapter 5.

c. Once collective tasks are trained to standard, they are integrated and sustained through mission-oriented training exercises such as STXs and FTXs.

d. The collective tasks and battle drills, selected by the platoon leader to make up an STX, are linked by leader command and control tasks.

e. The STXs in various combinations can be used in developing an FTX. The FTXs are normally accomplished at company or higher level.

TRAINING NOTE: Leaders must instill situational awareness in all subordinate leaders and soldiers. Soldiers must be constantly alert for and avoid situations that may result in death or injury. For example, lock cargo hatches securely; do not grab the hot barrel of a machine gun; always be aware of your buddies' location during live-fire exercises; double-check all mortar firing data.

2-2. BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEMS

The BOSs are functions of the combined arms force, contributing to combat power. (The T&EOs in Chapter 5 are indexed according to BOSs.) These seven operating systems support the application of the BOSs outlined in FM 25-100. The operating systems to platoon/squad task are as follows:

a. **Maneuver.** These tasks allow the platoon to move on the battlefield with fire, or fire potential, to achieve a positional advantage over the enemy and to accomplish the mission.

b. **Fire support.** This entails planning and coordinating fire support assets to support maneuver and to add depth to the battle.

c. **Intelligence.** This category includes the platoon tasks that amass knowledge of the enemy, weather, and terrain features. The commander must have this intelligence information for planning combat operations.

d. **Mobility and survivability.** This includes tasks that allow the platoon freedom of movement with the protection necessary to fulfill their primary mission (includes NBC tasks).

e. **Air defense.** These tasks nullify or reduce the effectiveness of hostile air action.

f. **Combat service support.** This includes tasks performed by the platoon to ensure that the unit can sustain operations.

g. **Command and control.** These tasks include platoon tasks that arrange and employ personnel, equipment, communications, facilities, and procedures to plan, coordinate, and control the platoon's operations to accomplish the mission.

2-3. TRAINING MATRIX DESCRIPTION

There are three matrixes in this chapter. Table 2-1 lists the matrixes and their page numbers.

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| TRAINING MATRIX 1: OPERATION-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX | 2-4 |
| TRAINING MATRIX 2: PUBLICATION REFERENCE-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX | 2-8 |
| TRAINING MATRIX 3: BATTLE DRILL-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX | 2-12 |

Table 2-1. Training matrixes.

2-4. TRAINING MATRIX 1: OPERATION-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX

Table 2-2 reflects the relationship of collective tasks (T&EOs) to operations performed by a platoon.

a. Table 2-2 illustrates the seven platoon critical wartime operations across the top and supporting T&EOs down the side. An "X" in a column indicates a T&EO that supports the operation at the top of that column. Where more than one X appears in a row, it indicates that the T&EO supports more than one operation. Therefore, in addition to looking down a column to see which T&EOs support a certain operation, the trainer

should look across a row to see which T&EOs support more than one operation and may be high-payoff tasks for unit training.

b. This matrix presents the full range of collective tasks. The trainer, however, need not train every task under a platoon operation to fully support that operation. He should select important tasks according to his commander's guidance, the status of his unit, resources available, METT-T analysis, and other unit requirements.

2-5. TRAINING MATRIX 2: PUBLICATION REFERENCE-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX

Table 2-3 identifies the reference that contains detailed information about the collective task.

2-6. TRAINING MATRIX 3: BATTLE DRILL-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK MATRIX

Table 2-4 illustrates the battle drills that support the collective tasks in this MTP. The letter "X" in a row indicates a battle drill that would normally be done to accomplish the overall T&EO.

| COLLECTIVE TASK | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------|--------|------|--------|-------------------------|--------|------------|
| | Movement To Contact | Attack | Raid | Ambush | Reconnaissance/Security | Defend | Retrograde |
| MANEUVER | | | | | | | |
| Execute Attack 7-3/4-1100 | | X | | | | | |
| Execute Assault 7-3/4-1103 | X | X | X | | | X | X |
| Perform Movement to Contact 7-3/4-1101 | X | | | | | | |
| Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108 | X | X | X | | | X | X |
| Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122 | X | | X | X | | X | X |
| Knock Out a Bunker 7-3/4-1113 | X | X | X | | | | |
| Clear Trench Line 7-3-1114 | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Raid 7-3-1102 | | | X | | | | |
| Perform Antiarmor Ambush 7-3/4-1143 | | | | X | | X | X |
| Perform Hasty Ambush 7-3/4-1144 | X | X | X | X | | X | X |
| Perform Point Ambush 7-3/4-1145 | | | | | | X | X |
| Execute Defense 7-3/4-1115 | X | | | | | X | X |
| Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136 | X | X | X | X | | X | X |
| Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134 | X | X | X | X | | X | X |

Table 2-2. Operation-to-collective task matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASK | Movement To Contact | Attack | Raid | Ambush | Reconnaissance/Security | Defend | Retrograde |
|---|---------------------|--------|------|--------|-------------------------|--------|------------|
| MANEUVER (continued) | | | | | | | |
| Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Perform Tactical Road March 7-3-1123 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Clear Building 7-3/4-1110 | X | X | X | | | | |
| Defend MOUT/Building 7-3/4-1118 | X | | | | | X | X |
| Perform Stay-Behind Operations 7-3/4-1116 | | | X | X | | X | X |
| Perform Linkup 7-3/4-1128 | X | X | X | X | X | X | |
| Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration 7-3/4-1137 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Take Action on Contact 7-3/4-1107 | X | X | X | | X | X | X |
| Break Contact 7-3/4-1111 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| React to Ambush 7-3/4-1112 | X | X | X | | X | X | X |
| Perform Delay 7-3/4-1119 | | | | X | X | X | X |
| Perform Relief Operations 7-3/4-1124 | | | | | | X | X |
| Perform Airborne Assault 7-3/4-1127 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |

Table 2-2. Operation-to-collective task matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASK | Movement To Contact | Attack | Raid | Ambush | Reconnaissance/Security | Defend | Retrograde |
|---|---------------------|--------|------|--------|-------------------------|--------|------------|
| MANEUVER (continued) | | | | | | | |
| Perform Operations With Armored Vehicles 7-3/4-1140 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Cross Water Obstacles 7-3/4-1131 | X | | X | X | | X | X |
| FIRE SUPPORT | | | | | | | |
| Employ Fire Support 7-3-1200 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| INTELLIGENCE | | | | | | | |
| Reconnoiter Zone 7-3-1004 | | | | | X | | |
| Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003 | | X | X | X | X | | |
| Reconnoiter Route 7-3-1005 | | | | | X | | |
| Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post 7-3/4-1008 | | | X | X | X | X | |
| Perform a Screen 7-3-1006 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| MOBILITY and SURVIVABILITY | | | | | | | |
| Breach an Obstacle 7-3/4-1402 | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Waterborne Operations 7-3/4-1408 | X | X | X | X | | X | X |

Table 2-2. Operation-to-collective task matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASK | Movement To Contact | Attack | Raid | Ambush | Reconnaissance/ Security | Defend | Retrograde |
|--|---------------------|--------|------|--------|-----------------------------|--------|------------|
| MOBILITY and SURVIVABILITY (continued) | | | | | | | |
| Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Construct Obstacle 7-3-1404 | | | | | | X | X |
| Maintain Operations Security 7-3/4-1409 | X | X | X | X | | X | X |
| Establish a Roadblock/Checkpoint 7-3/4-1401 | | | | | X | X | |
| Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle 7-3/4-1403 | X | X | X | | | | |
| AIR DEFENSE | | | | | | | |
| Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301 | X | X | X | X | | X | X |
| COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT | | | | | | | |
| Perform Combat Service Support Operations 7-3/4-1501 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Process Enemy Prisoners of War/Captured Materiel 7-3/4-1503 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Treat and Evacuate Casualties 7-3/4-1504 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| COMMAND AND CONTROL | | | | | | | |
| Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |

Table 2-2. Operation-to-collective task matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASK | FM 3-4 | FM 3-100 | FM 7-7J | FM 7-8 | FM 7-10 | FM 7-98 | FM 90-4 | FM 90-8 | FM 90-10-1 |
|---|--------|----------|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|------------|
| MANEUVER | | | | | | | | | |
| Execute Attack 7-3/4-1100 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Execute Assault 7-3/4-1103 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Movement to Contact 7-3/4-1101 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108 | | | | X | X | | | | |
| Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122 | | | X | X | | | | | |
| Knock Out a Bunker 7-3/4-1113 | | | X | X | | | | | |
| Clear Trench Line 7-3-1114 | | | X | X | | | | | |
| Perform Raid 7-3-1102 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Antiarmor Ambush 7-3/4-1143 | | | X | X | | | | | |
| Perform Hasty Ambush 7-3/4-1144 | | | X | X | | X | | X | |
| Perform Point Ambush 7-3/4-1145 | | | X | X | | X | | X | |
| Execute Defense 7-3/4-1115 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135 | | | | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Tactical Road March 7-3-1123 | | | X | X | X | | | | |

Table 2-3. Publication reference-to-collective task matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASK | FM 3-4 | FM 3-100 | FM 7-7J | FM 7-8 | FM 7-10 | FM 7-98 | FM 90-4 | FM 90-8 | FM 90-10-1 |
|--|--------|----------|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|------------|
| MANEUVER (continued) | | | | | | | | | |
| Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Clear Building 7-3/4-1110 | | | | X | | | | | X |
| Defend MOUT/Building 7-3/4-1118 | | | | X | | | | | X |
| Perform Stay-Behind Operations 7-3/4-1116 | | | | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Linkup 7-3/4-1128 | | | | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration 7-3/4-1137 | | | | X | X | X | | X | |
| Take Action on Contact 7-3/4-1107 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Break Contact 7-3/4-1111 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| React to Ambush 7-3/4-1112 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Delay 7-3/4-1119 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Relief Operations 7-3/4-1124 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Airborne Assault 7-3/4-1127 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Operations With Armored Vehicles 7-3/4-1140 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126 | | | | X | X | | X | | |
| Cross Water Obstacles 7-3/4-1131 | | | | X | X | | | | |

Table 2-3. Publication reference-to-collective task matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASK | FM 7-92 | FM 3-4 | FM 3-100 | FM 7-7J | FM 7-8 | FM 7-10 | FM 7-98 | FM 90-4 | FM 90-8 | FM 90-10-1 |
|---|---------|--------|----------|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|------------|
| FIRE SUPPORT | | | | | | | | | | |
| Employ Fire Support 7-3-1200 | | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| INTELLIGENCE | | | | | | | | | | |
| Reconnoiter Zone 7-3-1004 | X | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003 | X | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Reconnoiter Route 7-3-1005 | X | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post 7-3/4-1008 | X | | | X | X | X | X | | | |
| Perform a Screen 7-3-1006 | X | | | | X | X | | | | |
| MOBILITY and SURVIVABILITY | | | | | | | | | | |
| Breach an Obstacle 7-3/4-1402 | | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Waterborne Operations 7-3/4-1408 | | | | | X | X | | | | |
| Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406 | | X | X | | | | | | | |
| Construct Obstacle 7-3-1404 | | | | X | X | X | X | | | |
| Maintain Operations Security 7-3/4-1409 | | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Establish a Roadblock/Checkpoint 7-3/4-1401 | | | | | X | X | X | | | |
| Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle 7-3/4-1403 | | | | X | X | | | | | |

Table 2-3. Publication reference-to-collective task matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASK | FM 3-4 | FM 3-100 | FM 7-7J | FM 7-8 | FM 7-10 | FM 7-98 | FM 90-4 | FM 90-8 | FM 90-10-1 |
|--|--------|----------|---------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|------------|
| AIR DEFENSE | | | | | | | | | |
| Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT | | | | | | | | | |
| Perform Combat Service Support Operations 7-3/4-1501 | | | X | X | X | | | | X |
| Process Enemy Prisoners of War/Captured Materiel 7-3/4-1503 | | | X | X | X | X | | | |
| Treat and Evacuate Casualties 7-3/4-1504 | | | X | X | X | X | | | |
| COMMAND AND CONTROL | | | | | | | | | |
| Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605 | | | | X | X | | | | |
| Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607 | | | X | X | X | | | | |

Table 2-3. Publication reference-to-collective task matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASK | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------|----------------------|------------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| | Conduct Platoon Attack | Conduct Squad Attack | React to Contact | Break Contact | React to Ambush | Knock Out Bunker | Enter Building/Clear Room | Enter/Clear Trench | Breach a Mined Wire Obstacle |
| MANEUVER | | | | | | | | | |
| Execute Attack 7-3/4-1100 | X | X | | | | | | | |
| Execute Assault 7-3/4-1103 | | | | X | | X | | X | |
| Perform Movement to Contact 7-3/4-1101 | | | X | | X | | | | X |
| Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108 | | | | | | | | | |
| Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122 | | | | X | | | | | |
| Knock Out a Bunker 7-3/4-1113 | | | | | | X | | | |
| Clear Trench Line 7-3-1114 | | | | | | | | X | |
| Perform Raid 7-3-1102 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Antiarmor Ambush 7-3/4-1143 | | | | X | | | | | |
| Perform Hasty Ambush 7-3/4-1144 | | | | X | | | | | |
| Perform Point Ambush 7-3/4-1145 | | | | X | | | | | |
| Execute Defense 7-3/4-1115 | | | X | | | | | | |
| Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136 | | | X | | | | | | |

Table 2-4. Battle drill-to-collective task matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASK | Conduct Platoon Attack | | Conduct Squad Attack | | React to Contact | | Break Contact | | React to Ambush | | Knock Out Bunker | | Enter Building/Clear Room | | Enter/Clear Trench | | Breach a Mined Wire Obstacle | |
|---|------------------------|--|----------------------|--|------------------|---|---------------|---|-----------------|--|------------------|--|---------------------------|--|--------------------|--|------------------------------|---|
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MANEUVER (continued) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134 | | | | | X | X | X | | | | | | | | | | | X |
| Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135 | | | | | X | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Perform Tactical Road March 7-3-1123 | | | | | X | | | X | | | | | | | | | | |
| Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125 | | | | | X | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Clear Building 7-3/4-1110 | | | | | | | | | | | | | X | | | | | |
| Defend MOUT/Building 7-3/4-1118 | | | | | X | | | | | | | | X | | | | | |
| Perform Stay-Behind Operations 7-3/4-1116 | | | | | X | X | X | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Perform Linkup 7-3/4-1128 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Perform Infiltration/Exfiltration 7-3/4-1107 | | | | | | | X | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Take Action on Contact 7-3/4-1137 | | | | | X | X | X | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Break Contact 7-3/4-1111 | | | | | | | X | | | | | | | | | | | |
| React to Ambush 7-3/4-1112 | | | | | | | | X | | | | | | | | | | |
| Perform Delay 7-3/4-1119 | | | | | | | X | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 2-4. Battle drill-to-collective task matrix continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASK | Conduct Platoon Attack | Conduct Squad Attack | React to Contact | Break Contact | React to Ambush | Knock Out Bunker | Enter Building/Clear Room | Enter/Clear Trench | Breach a Mined Wire Obstacle |
|---|------------------------|----------------------|------------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| MANUEVER (continued) | | | | | | | | | |
| Perform Relief Operations 7-3/4-1124 | | | X | | | | | | |
| Perform Airborne Assault 7-3/4-1127 | | | X | | X | | | | |
| Perform Operations With Armored Vehicles 7-3/4-1140 | | | | | | | | | |
| Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126 | | | X | | X | | | | |
| Cross Water Obstacles 7-3/4-1131 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| FIRE SUPPORT | | | | | | | | | |
| Employ Fire Support 7-3-1200 | | | | | | | | | |
| INTELLIGENCE | | | | | | | | | |
| Reconnoiter Zone 7-3-1004 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Reconnoiter Route 7-3-1005 | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post 7-3/4-1008 | | | | | | | | | |
| Perform a Screen 7-3-1006 | | | | X | | | | | |

Table 2-4. Battle drill-to-collective task matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASK | Conduct Platoon Attack | Conduct Squad Attack | React to Contact | Break Contact | React to Ambush | Knock Out Bunker | Enter Building/Clear Room | Enter/Clear Trench | Breach a Mined Wire Obstacle |
|--|------------------------|----------------------|------------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| MOBILITY and SURVIVABILITY | | | | | | | | | |
| Breach an Obstacle 7-3/4-1402 | | | X | | | | | | X |
| Perform Waterborne Operations 7-3/4-1408 | | | X | | | | | | |
| Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406 | | | | | | | | | |
| Construct Obstacle 7-3-1404 | | | | | | | | | |
| Maintain Operations Security 7-3/4-1409 | | | | | | | | | |
| Establish a Roadblock/Checkpoint 7-3/4-1401 | | | X | | X | | | | |
| Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle 7-3/4-1403 | | | | | | | | | X |
| AIR DEFENSE | | | | | | | | | |
| Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301 | | | | | | | | | |
| COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT | | | | | | | | | |
| Perform Combat Service Support Operations 7-3/4-1501 | | | | | | | | | |
| Process Enemy Prisoners of War/Captured Materiel 7-3/4-1503 | | | | | | | | | |
| Treat and Evacuate Casualties 7-3/4-1504 | | | | | | | | | |

Table 2-4. Battle drill-to-collective task matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASK | Conduct Platoon Attack | Conduct Squad Attack | React to Contact | Break Contact | React to Ambush | Knock Out Bunker | Enter Building/Clear Room | Enter/Clear Trench | Breach a Mined Wire Obstacle |
|-----------------|--|----------------------|------------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| | COMMAND AND CONTROL | | | | | | | | |
| | Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605 | | | | | | | | |
| | Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606 | | | | | | | | |
| | Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607 | | | | | | | | |

Table 2-4. Battle drill-to-collective task matrix (continued).

CHAPTER 3

OPERATION OUTLINES**3-1. GENERAL**

An operation outline is a diagram of the relationship between each operation and the subordinate collective tasks. Each example STX provides the trainer a diagram of the platoon operation, example STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them. The STXs are an integral part of the overall training plan.

a. The infantry platoon has seven critical wartime operations—movement to contact, attack, raid, ambush, reconnaissance and security, defend, and retrograde. While the operations will not change, the supporting collective tasks will vary in combat with the mission, depending on the type of infantry platoon and METT-T.

b. Figures 3-1 through 3-14 contain example operation outlines and example STXs for the seven critical operations of an infantry platoon. Table 3-1 is a list of the operation outlines.

| FIGURE | OPERATION OUTLINE | PAGE |
|----------------|--|------|
| 3-2 | .Movement to Contact | 3-5 |
| 3-4 | .Attack | 3-8 |
| 3-6 | .Raid | 3-11 |
| 3-8 | .Ambush | 3-14 |
| 3-10 | .Reconnaissance and Security | 3-17 |
| 3-12 | .Defend | 3-20 |
| 3-14 | .Retrograde | 3-23 |

Table 3-1. Listing of operation outlines.

3-2. RELATIONSHIP OF OPERATION OUTLINES TO TRAINING MATRIXES

The matrixes (Chapter 2) provide the critical collective tasks for each of the seven platoon operations. These tasks can be combined into STXs based on

different conditions. Combinations of these tasks can be put into many different STXs and training plans.

a. The example operation outlines can be used to help build training plans. The example STXs are developed from the operation outline (paragraph 3-4) or the operation-to-collective task matrix (Chapter 2, Table 2-2).

b. The trainer can either select an STX from the example STXs listed or develop a different STX based on the unit's training needs. Different conditions require changing the selection of collective tasks to accomplish the same mission. Therefore, the STXs must be tailored based on a unit's unique circumstances.

c. Complete platoon training plans must include individual (including leader) and collective tasks (T&EOs and battle drills) required to support the STXs. Individual tasks are listed in each T&EO (Chapter 5). A collective task-to-battle drill matrix is in Chapter 2.

3-3. RELATIONSHIP OF OPERATION OUTLINES TO STX(S)

Operation outlines have been developed into STX(s) for the infantry platoon. Each example is based on a given set of conditions to illustrate there is more than one set of tasks to train in support of a certain operation. The tasks and sequencing of the tasks varies as the conditions of METT-T change.

3-4. USE OF OPERATION OUTLINE

Corresponding to each example STX is a one-page operation outline that is used for training, planning, and selecting collective and individual tasks for training to proficiency. The operation outline is used to select the appropriate tasks when planning STXs, FTXs, or to complete training programs. The overall operation standard is on the upper right of each page.

a. The first row under the operation lists the collective tasks and or T&EOs, which are performed each time the operation is executed. The additional collective tasks supporting that operation, below the first row and marked with an asterisk, are selected based on METT-T and the unit training status. These tasks may be executed once, several times, or continuously in support of the operation.

b. Critical drills and leader and individual tasks, associated with the operation, complete the outline.

3-5. CONDITION STATEMENT

The condition statement before each operation provides the tactical situation for the STXs. The general conditions assist the training manager in selecting tasks to support the platoon operation to be trained.

OPERATION 1: MOVEMENT TO CONTACT

CONDITIONS: Contact with the enemy has been broken. The latest INTSUMs indicate that the enemy is withdrawing to establish defensive positions and is at 65 to 70 percent strength. He has the capability for indirect fire and CAS. The enemy has already used chemicals and probably will do so again. The enemy has not had time to establish a defense in depth. The platoon conducts the operation as part of a larger force. A movement to contact is initiated to regain contact, exploit enemy weaknesses, and to prevent reinforcement and establishment of defense in depth. The platoon's task is to protect the company from a surprise attack by providing early warning of enemy positions and obstacles. The platoon has indirect fire support capability.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: 1st Platoon conducts a movement to contact along Axis BRAVO NLT 221300MayXX to regain contact with the enemy.

| MOVEMENT TO CONTACT | |
|---|---|
| STX 37 | STX 38 |
| Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605 | Perform Tactical Road March 7-3/4-1123 |
| Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606 | Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136 |
| Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126 | Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605 |
| Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134 | Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606 |
| *React to Contact Battle Drill 2 | Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134 |
| Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607 | *React to Ambush Battle Drill 4 |
| | Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607 |
| *Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL) | |

Figure 3-1. Example of movement to contact STXs.

| MOVEMENT TO CONTACT | |
|---|--|
| <p>STX 39</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> | <p>STX 40</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Employ Fire Support 7-3/4-1200</p> <p>Execute Assault 7-3/4-1103</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> |
| <p>STX 41</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135</p> <p>Perform Hasty Ambush 7-3/4-1144</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Knock Out a Bunker 7-3/4-1113</p> | <p>**STX 42</p> |
| <p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p> | |

Figure 3-1. Example of movement to contact STXs (continued).

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-2.

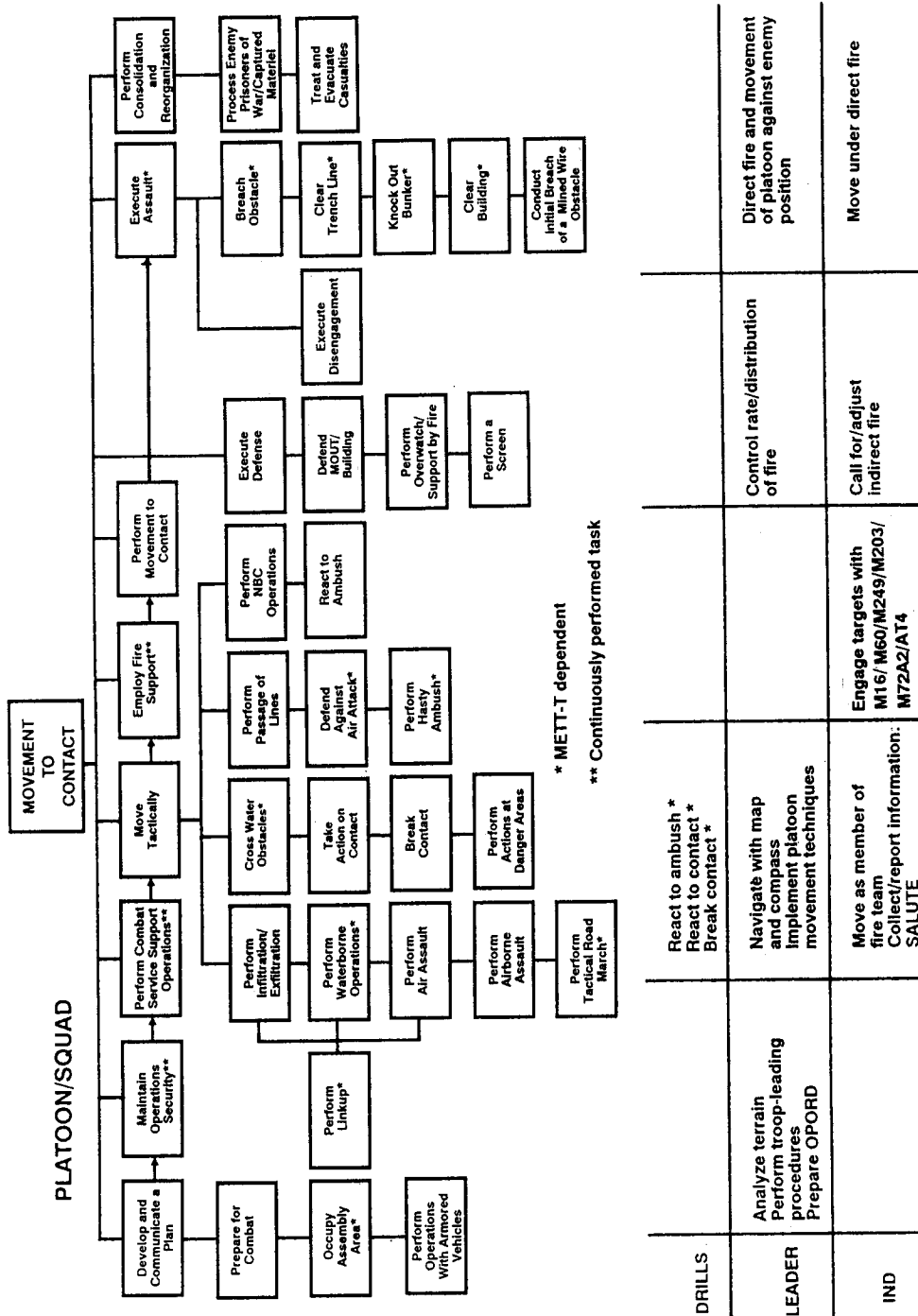


Figure 3-2. Example of a movement to contact operation outline.

OPERATION 2: ATTACK

CONDITIONS: Contact with the enemy has been reestablished. Initial reports indicate that he is at 65 to 70 percent strength and has not been reinforced. Enemy defensive positions are not well established. He has indirect fire and CAS capability. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again. An attack is ordered to prevent reinforcement and establishment of heavily fortified defense in depth. The platoon is acting as part of a larger force and has indirect fire capability.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: 1st Platoon attacks to destroy the enemy defensive site in the vicinity of GL333016 NLT 220200JunXX to prevent reinforcement.

| ATTACK | |
|---|---|
| STX 1 | STX 2 |
| Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136 Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605 Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606 Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134 *React to Contact Battle Drill 2 Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607 *Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL) | Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605 Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606 Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125 Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134 *React to Ambush Battle Drill 4 *Break Contact Battle Drill 3 |

Figure 3-3. Example of attack STXs.

| ATTACK | |
|---|--|
| <p>STX 3</p> <p>Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> | <p>**STX 4</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform a Screen 7-3/4-1006</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> |
| <p>STX 5</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle Battle Drill 8</p> <p>Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108</p> <p>Execute Assault 7-3/4-1103</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> | <p>**STX 6</p> |
| <p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p> | |

Figure 3-3. Example of attack STXs (continued).

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-4, page 3-8.

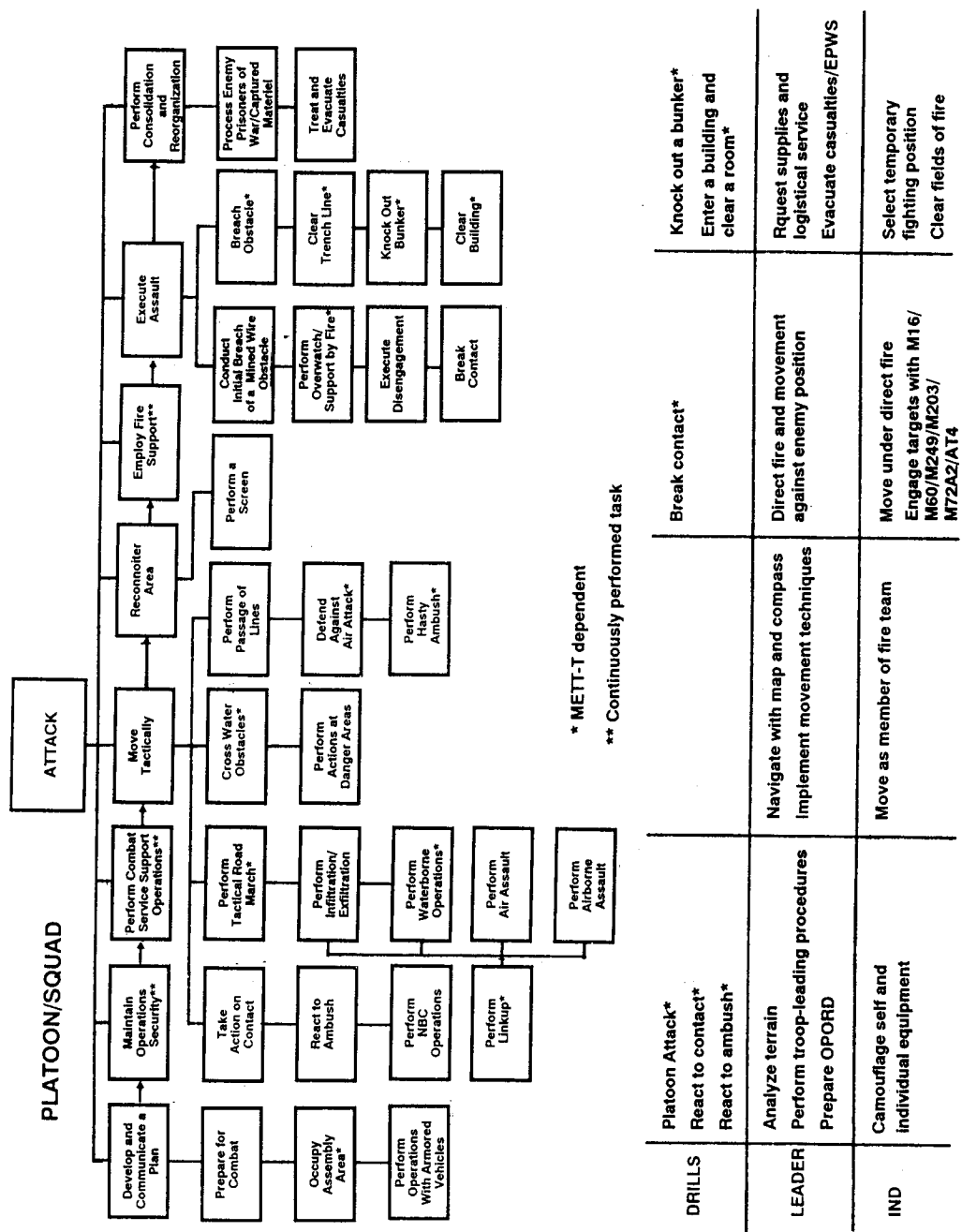


Figure 3-4. Example of an attack operation outline.

OPERATION 3: RAID

CONDITIONS: The latest INTSUMs indicate that an enemy communications base station with a squad-size security force is within the brigade area of operations. The enemy has the capabilities for indirect fire, CAS, and chemical munition employment. The battalion has received instructions from S3 brigade to conduct a raid to destroy the base station. A raid by a platoon is indicated to have the least chance of detection and the best possible chance of success. As part of a larger force, your platoon has been ordered to conduct a raid to destroy the base station. Your platoon has indirect fire capability.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: 1st Platoon conducts a raid in the vicinity of GL2212959 NLT 131300JulXX to destroy the communications base station.

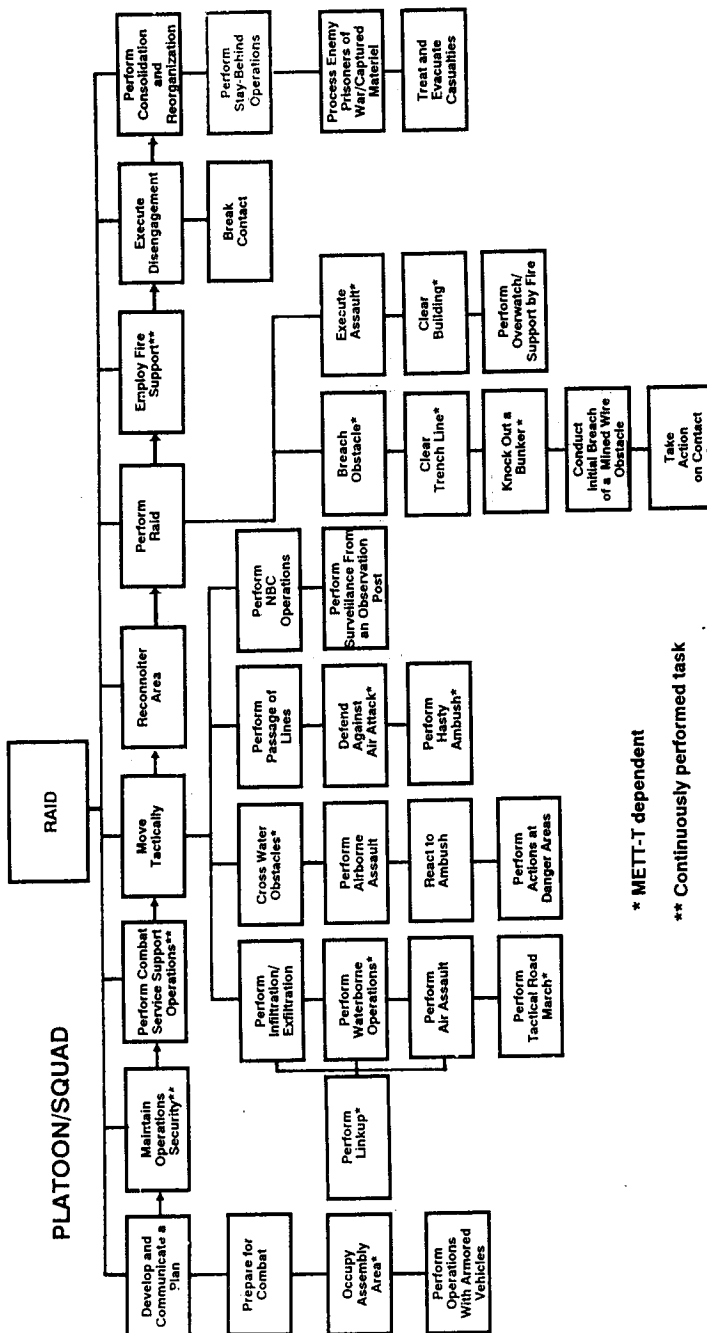
| RAID | |
|--|--|
| <p>STX 7</p> <p>Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Raid 7-3/4-1102</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> | <p>**STX 8</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108</p> <p>Knock Out a Bunker 7-3/4-1113</p> <p>Breach Obstacle 7-3/4-1402</p> |
| *Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL) | |

Figure 3-5. Example of raid STXs.

| RAID | |
|---|---|
| <p>STX 9</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Employ Fire Support 7-3/4-1200</p> | <p>**STX 10</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Perform Tactical Road March 7-3/4-1123</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Antiarmor Ambush 7-3/4-1143</p> |
| <p>STX 11</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003</p> <p>Perform Raid 7-3/4-1102</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> | <p>**STX 12</p> |
| <p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p> | |

Figure 3-5. Example of raid STXs (continued).

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-6.



| | | | |
|--------|---|--------------------------------------|---|
| DRILLS | React to ambush* React to contact* Break contact* | Perform leader's reconnaissance | Consolidate and reorganize following contact |
| LEADER | Analyze terrain Perform troop-leading procedures Prepare OPORD | Implement platoon movement technique | Plan withdrawal under pressure |
| IND | Employ light and noise discipline Camouflage self and individual equipment | Move as member of fire team | Move under direct fire Engage targets with M16/ M60/M249/M203/ M72A2/AT4 |
| | | Collect/report information: SALUTE | Handle EPWs |

Figure 3-6. Example of a raid operation outline.

OPERATION 4: AMBUSH

CONDITIONS: A squad-size enemy element has been patrolling routinely through the battalion area of operations along the same routes for several days. Your platoon has been directed to execute an ambush to disrupt the enemy's patrolling. Other than providing indirect fire capabilities, your unit is operating separately from the company. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire capabilities.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: 1st Platoon conducts an ambush in the vicinity of TG696331 NLT 031900JanXX to disrupt enemy patrolling operations.

| AMBUSH | |
|--|---|
| <p>STX 13</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p> <p>Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1135</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> | <p>STX 14</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003</p> <p>Perform Ambush 7-3/4-1106</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*React to Ambush Battle Drill 4</p> <p>Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> |
| *Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL) | |

Figure 3-7. Example of ambush STXs.

| AMBUSH | |
|--|---|
| <p>STX 15</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> | <p>STX 16</p> <p>Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Point Ambush 7-3/4-1145</p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p> |
| <p>STX 17</p> <p>Perform Tactical Road March 7-3/4-1123</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*React to Ambush Battle Drill 4</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> | <p>**STX 18</p> |
| <p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p> | |

Figure 3-7. Example of ambush STXs (continued).

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-8, page 3-14.

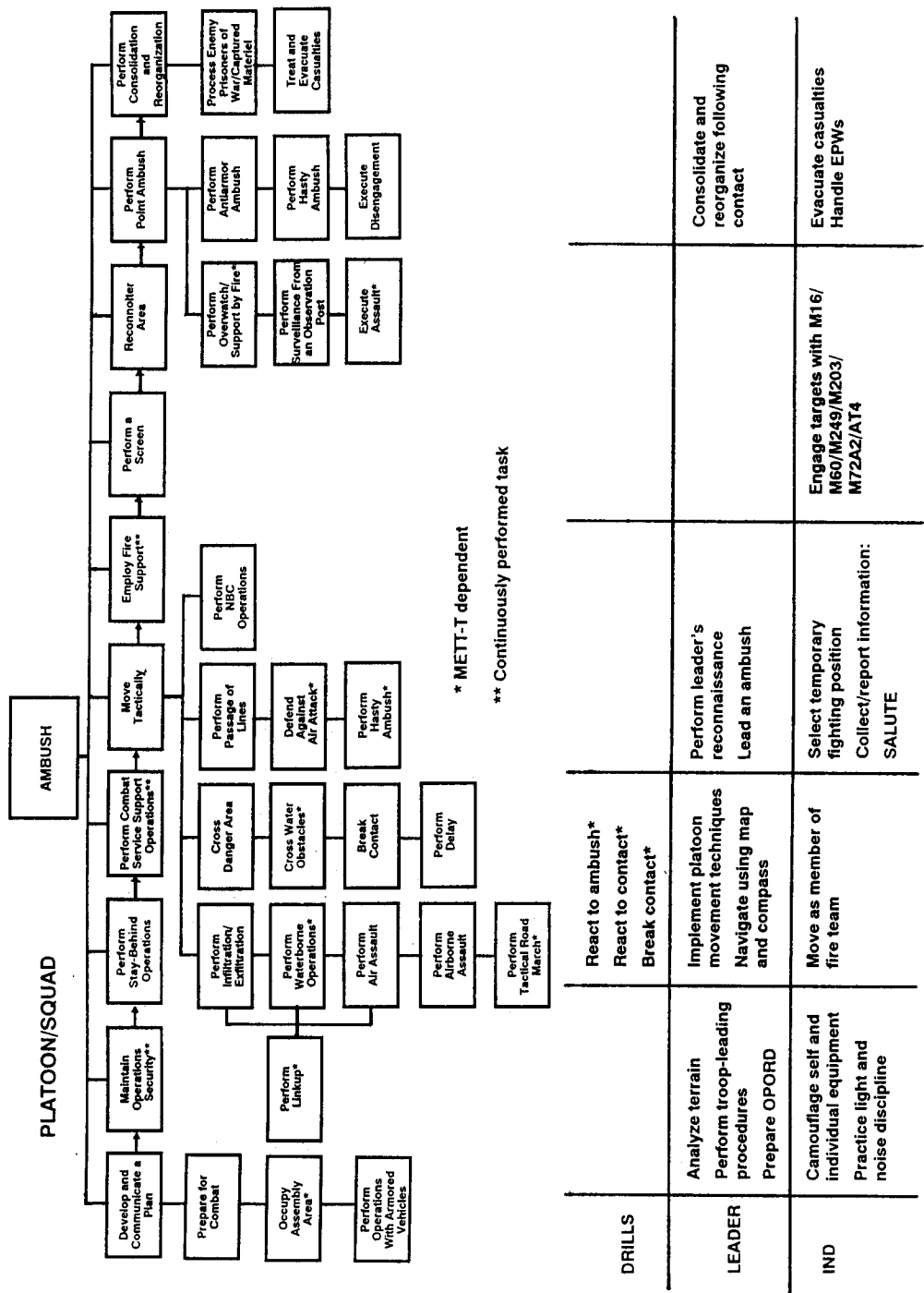


Figure 3-8. Example of an ambush operation outline.

OPERATION 5: RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY

CONDITIONS: The battalion S2 briefed that the enemy has begun to establish defense positions in and around a nearby, small village. He has the capability for indirect fire, CAS, and chemicals. As part of a larger force, your platoon has been ordered to reconnoiter the village to determine enemy positions and strength.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: 1st Platoon conducts an area reconnaissance in the vicinity of Objective Rock (GT3311) NLT 130800DecXX to locate enemy positions and determine their strength.

| RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY | |
|--|--|
| <p>STX 25</p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Reconnoiter Area 7-3/4-1003</p> <p>Perform Surveillance From an Observation Post 7-3/4-1008</p> | <p>STX 26</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p> <p>Reconnoiter Route 7-3/4-1003</p> <p>Perform Hasty Ambush 7-3/4-1144</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> |
| *Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL) | |

Figure 3-9. Example of reconnaissance and security STXs.

| RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY | |
|---|--|
| <p>STX 27</p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1126</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> | <p>STX 28</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Perform Operations With Armored Vehicles 7-3/4-1140</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p> <p>Perform a Screen 7-3/4-1006</p> |
| <p>STX 29</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Reconnoiter Zone 7-3/4-1004</p> <p>Perform Linkup 7-3/4-1128</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406</p> | <p>**STX 30</p> |
| <p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p> | |

Figure 3-9. Example of reconnaissance and security STXs (continued).

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-10.

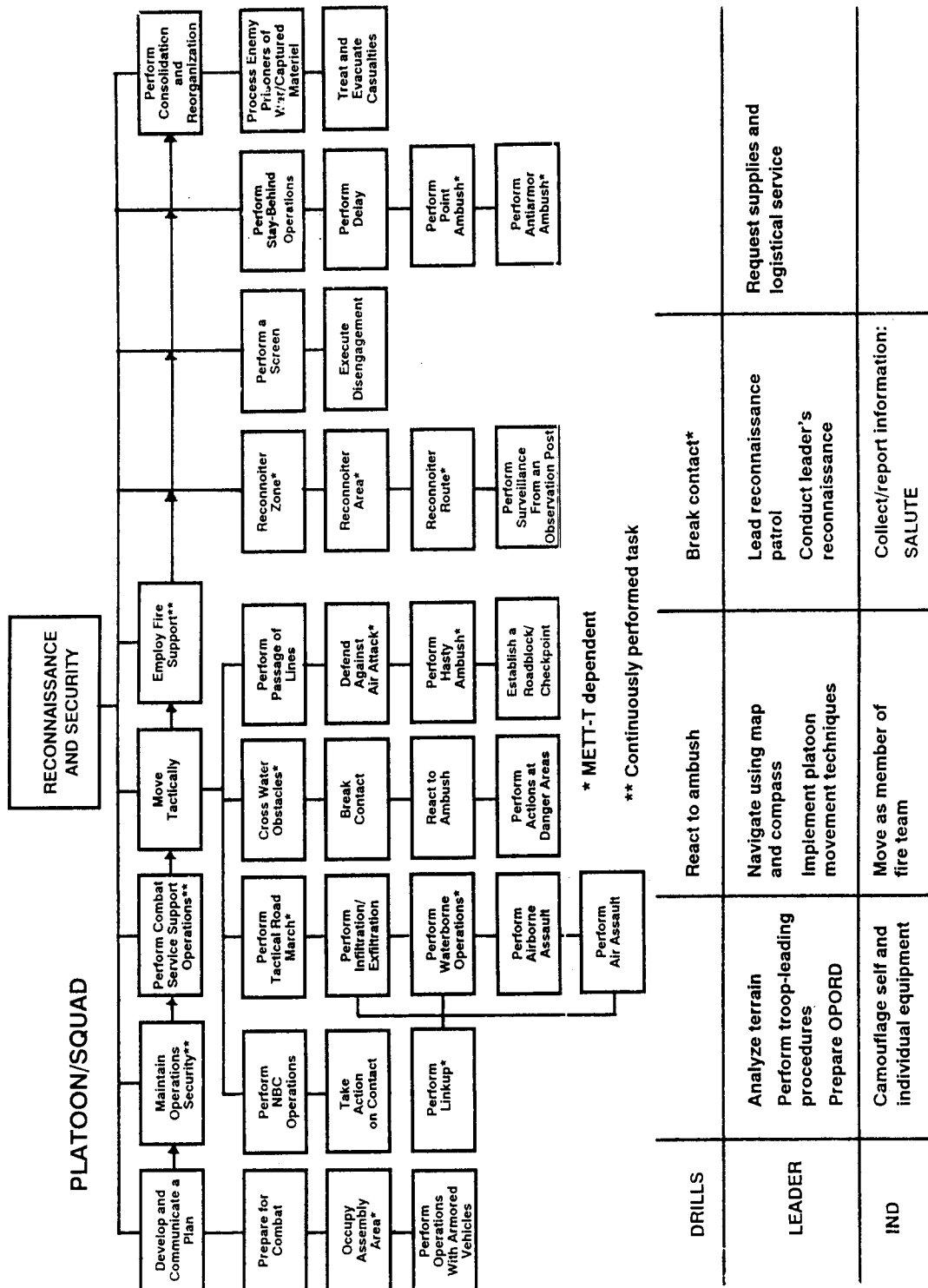


Figure 3-10. Example of a reconnaissance and security operation outline.

OPERATION 6: DEFEND

CONDITIONS: The latest INTSUMs indicate that enemy forces are expected to use a high-speed avenue of approach that is dominated by a small, built-up area containing strongly constructed buildings. The enemy has the capability for indirect fire, CAS, and chemicals. A defense in and around the town is necessary to deny the enemy the use of the avenue of approach. Your platoon, as part of a larger force, is ordered to occupy and prepare defensive positions that overlook the avenue of approach. The platoon has indirect fire capability.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: 1st Platoon defends in the vicinity of TT131002 (HAP HANSEN) NLT 250600JunXX to deny enemy the use of the avenue of approach.

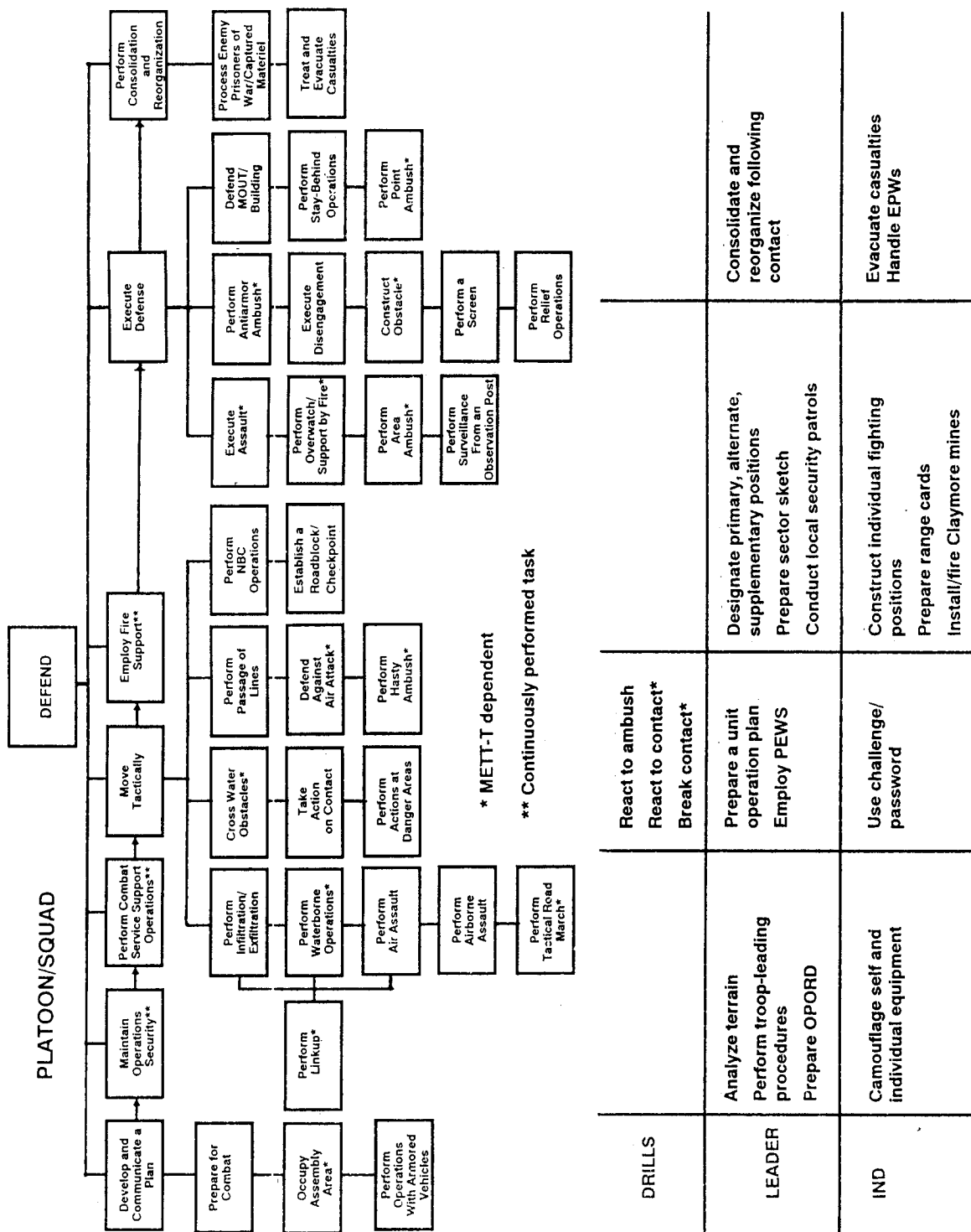
| DEFEND | |
|--|---|
| <p>STX 31</p> <p>Perform Tactical Road March 7-3/4-1123</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>React to Ambush Battle Drill 4</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> | <p>STX 32</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Execute Defense 7-3/4-1115</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p> <p>Perform Overwatch/ Support by Fire 7-3/4-1108</p> |
| *Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL) | |

Figure 3-11. Example of defend STXs.

| DEFEND | |
|--|---|
| <p>STX 33</p> <p>Defend MOUT/Building 7-3/4-1118</p> <p>Construct Obstacle 7-3/4-1401</p> <p>Employ Fire Support 7-3/4-1200</p> | <p>STX 34</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Defend MOUT/Building 7-3/4-1118</p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p> <p>Perform Passage of Lines 7-3/4-1125</p> |
| <p>STX 35</p> <p>Execute Defense 7-3/4-1115</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Combat Service Support Operations 7-3/4-1501</p> <p>Perform Stay-Behind Operations 7-3/4-1116</p> | <p>**STX 36</p> |
| <p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p> | |

Figure 3-11. Example of defend STXs (continued).

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-12, page 3-20.



OPERATION 7: RETROGRADE

CONDITIONS: Enemy contact has been heavy for three days and nights. Your battalion is at 70 percent strength and is ordered to begin moving to a more defensible terrain. The enemy has already used chemicals and will probably do so again. He has indirect fire and CAS capability. Your company has been ordered to delay the enemy as the battalion withdraws. Your platoon will operate as part of the company delay.

EXAMPLE MISSION STATEMENT: 1st Platoon delays in the vicinity of GL336204 NLT 1200600JulXX to facilitate the withdrawal of the battalion.

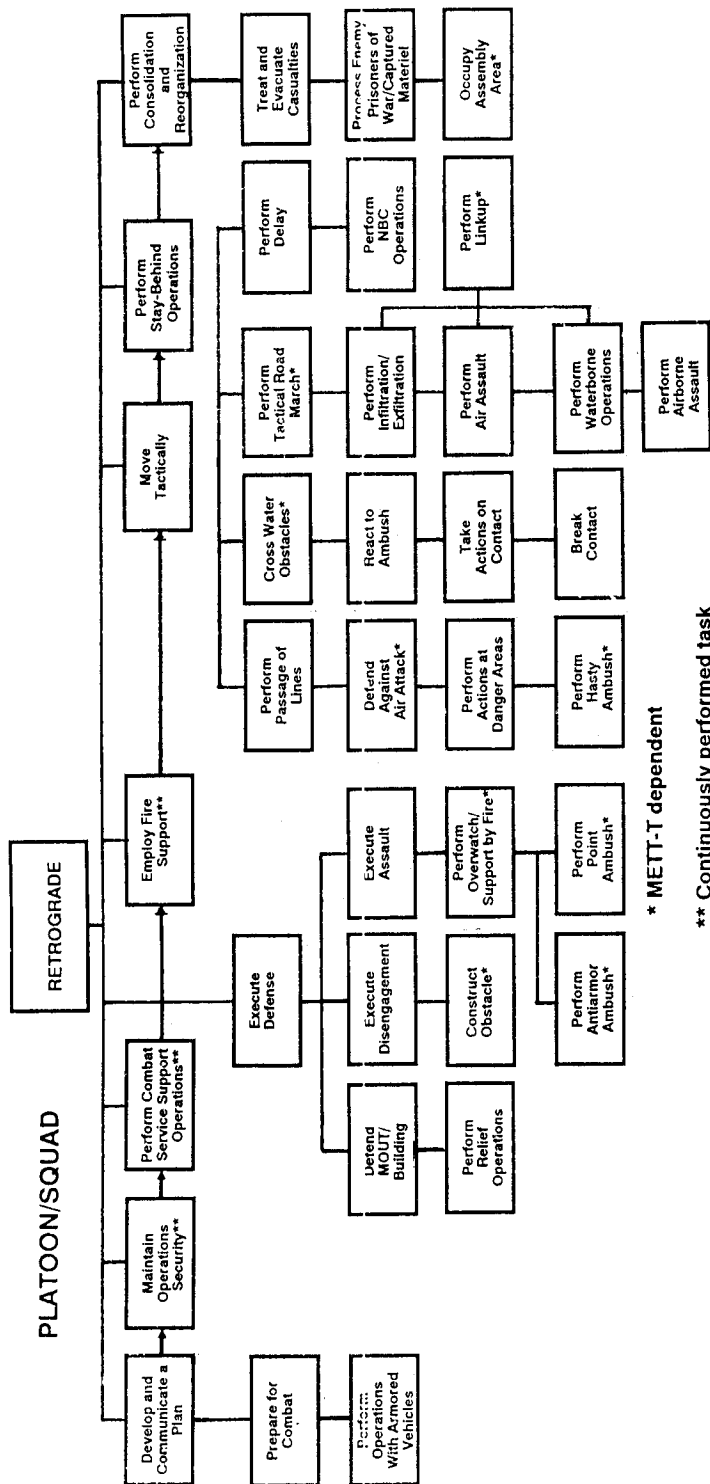
| RETROGRADE | |
|---|---|
| <p>STX 19</p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Defend Against Air Attack 7-3/4-1301</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire 7-3/4-1197</p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p> | <p>STX 20</p> <p>Occupy Assembly Area 7-3/4-1136</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Perform NBC Operations 7-3/4-1406</p> <p>Perform Linkup 7-3/4-1128</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1607</p> <p>Perform Infiltration/ Exfiltration 7-3/4-1137</p> |
| *Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL) | |

Figure 3-13. Example of retrograde STXs.

| RETROGRADE | |
|---|---|
| <p>STX 21</p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> | <p>STX 22</p> <p>Develop and Communicate a Plan 7-3/4-1605</p> <p>Prepare for Combat 7-3/4-1606</p> <p>Construct Obstacle 7-3/4-1404</p> <p>Employ Fire Support 7-3/4-1200</p> <p>Execute Disengagement 7-3/4-1122</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1134</p> |
| <p>STX 23</p> <p>Perform Air Assault 7-3/4-1036</p> <p>Move Tactically 7-3/4-1025</p> <p>Perform Actions at Danger Areas 7-3/4-1028</p> <p>*React to Contact Battle Drill 2</p> <p>Perform Consolidation and Reorganization 7-3/4-1047</p> | <p>**STX 24</p> |
| <p>*Battle Drills (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)</p> <p>**NOTE: Trainers may develop their own STX based on the above conditions statement or develop their own conditions statement.</p> | |

Figure 3-13. Example of retrograde STXs (continued).

NOTE: T&EOs may be selected from the operation outline in Figure 3-14.



| DRILLS | React to ambush* | React to contact* Break contact | Request supplies and logistical service |
|--------|--|---|--|
| LEADER | Direct platoon-size element fires first in defense Plan withdrawal under pressure | Control occupation of bounding position | |
| IND | Construct individual fighting positions Engage targets with M16/M60/M249/M203/M72A2/AT4 | Move under direct fire Move as member of fire team | Select temporary fighting position Clear fields of fire |

Figure 3-14. Example of a retrograde operation outline.

CHAPTER 4

TRAINING EXERCISES**4-1. GENERAL**

Training exercises are used to practice, evaluate, and sustain proficiency in individual and collective tasks.

TRAINING NOTE: Leaders must instill situational awareness in all subordinate leaders and soldiers. Soldiers must be constantly alert for and avoid situations that may result in death or injury. For example, lock cargo hatches; do not grab the hot barrel of a machine gun; always be aware of your buddies' location during live-fire exercises; double-check all mortar firing data.

4-2. SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE

The STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises that train a single collective task (T&EO) or a group of related battle drills and collective tasks (T&EOs). The STXs provide the leader a method to train using doctrinally approved tactics and techniques, but unlike a battle drill, it does not establish the method of execution. The STXs may be modified based on METT-T. This method provides for standardization without stereotyping training. The STXs may be performed without ammunition, with blank ammunition, live fire, or with or without MILES, and under all environmental conditions. Although mission-oriented (based on higher's OPORD), an STX does not train all tasks required for an operation. An STX is a series of collective tasks arranged in a logical sequence to train a portion of an operation. The STXs also require leader tasks, such as planning, controlling, and reporting, to tie the supporting collective tasks together. Each STX focuses on a specific mission (IAW higher's OPORD), but does not stand alone (under all conditions) as the only STX required for operation proficiency. To accomplish proficiency, several STXs with the same operation will have to be trained. This is a continuous process that must be repeated for each operation.

a. STX development.

(1) At platoon level, STXs are conducted extensively. The trainer can select from the example STXs shown in Chapter 3, Operation Outlines, or make his own (using the matrixes in Chapter 2 or the operation outlines in Chapter 3) based on METT-T, training needs, and commander's guidelines.

(2) Each STX plan should consist of the following (see Figure 4-1):

(a) Heading. The heading includes the echelon (platoon, squad) for which the STX was prepared and the title (attack, defend) of the STX.

(b) Objective. The objective identifies who the STX is designed to train and what operation it supports.

(c) Interface. The interface paragraph indicates those battle drills (squad and platoon for platoon MTP) and company or habitually attached and supporting units' STXs, if available, that can be trained along with the STX.

(d) Training. The training section includes the following:

- Guidance on related subordinate unit leader, individual, and collective training that the leader may wish to consider for training before the performance of the STX.
- Tips that will aid the leader in preparing and conducting the STX.
- General and special situations (scenario) and FRAGO.

(e) T&EO sequence. This lists T&EO task title and page number (from Chapter 5) in the chronological sequence in which they are executed in the STX.

(f) Support requirements. This section provides a listing of items required to conduct the exercise. Examples of specific requirements are number and types of equipment, number of evaluators, number and types of OPFOR, type and size of training area, ammunition, training aids and or devices, and rations.

| HEADING | |
|--|--|
| 1. Objective. | |
| 2. Interface. | |
| 3. Training. | |
| a. Guidance. | |
| b. Tips. | |
| c. Enhancers. | |
| d. General and special situations. Graphic portrayal of STX. | |
| 4. Support Requirements. | |
| 5. T&EO Sequence. | |

Figure 4-1. Example STX format.

b. STX training.

(1) The STX training should be tailored to train high-payoff tasks identified in the training plan. High-payoff tasks are those individual and leader tasks, battle drills, and other collective tasks that support several platoon operations and will significantly improve proficiency. An STX may involve only key participants in a tactical exercise without troops, or may involve the entire platoon with all equipment.

(2) Before beginning platoon STX training, make sure that the platoon can perform all the subtasks for the T&EOs. Some of these subtasks are individual and or leader tasks. If in doubt about the platoon's ability to perform the subtasks, conduct individual and or battle drill training to bring the platoon up to standard. Multiechelon training should be used whenever possible to make the best use of available time.

(3) Conduct an AAR after each STX. (See Chapter 6.)

INFANTRY PLATOON SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE ATTACK

1. **Objective.**

This example STX trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the platoon's operation, Attack.

2. **Interface.**

This STX is supported by the following battle drill: React to Contact.

3. **Training.**

a. *Guidance.* The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the critical soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The individual tasks listed in each T&EO should be used. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 11B and the common tasks soldier's manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards, and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes SDT, common tasks test, and commander's evaluation.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the critical collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and operation as well as other operations are in the operation-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 and the attack operation outline in Chapter 3.

(3) Leader training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the critical individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of

the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Training is not limited to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement platoon SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercises without troops allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-101, pages C-3 and C-5.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pamphlet 350-100.)

b. *Training Tips.* Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX.

(1) Know the requirements for infiltration (FM 7-8, page 1-7) tactical movement (FM 7-8, Section III), and consolidation and reorganization (FM 7-8, pages 2-26, 2-58, 2-59, 2-60, and 2-63).

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that time-consuming mistakes are not made.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using several options.

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise can be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC. This scenario involves an active NBC environment.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more

difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the “run” phase. Full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances are all needed for the “run” phase. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the greatest benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)

(e) At least one evaluator should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) The OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

c. *Training Enhancers.* This STX requires the platoon to perform passage of lines, move tactically, overwatch/support by fire, knock out a bunker, and consolidate and reorganize.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in this STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without NVDs.

(2) This STX can be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

d. *General Situation.* The exercise scenario is as follows:

(1) Contact with the enemy has been reestablished. Initial reports indicate that he is at 65 to 70 percent strength and has not been reinforced. His defensive positions are not well established. He has the capability for indirect fire and CAS. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again. An attack is ordered to prevent reinforcement and establishment of heavily fortified defense in depth. The platoon is acting as part of the company and has indirect fire available. (Figure 4-2, page 4-6, illustrates the graphic scenario of task performance in this exercise.)

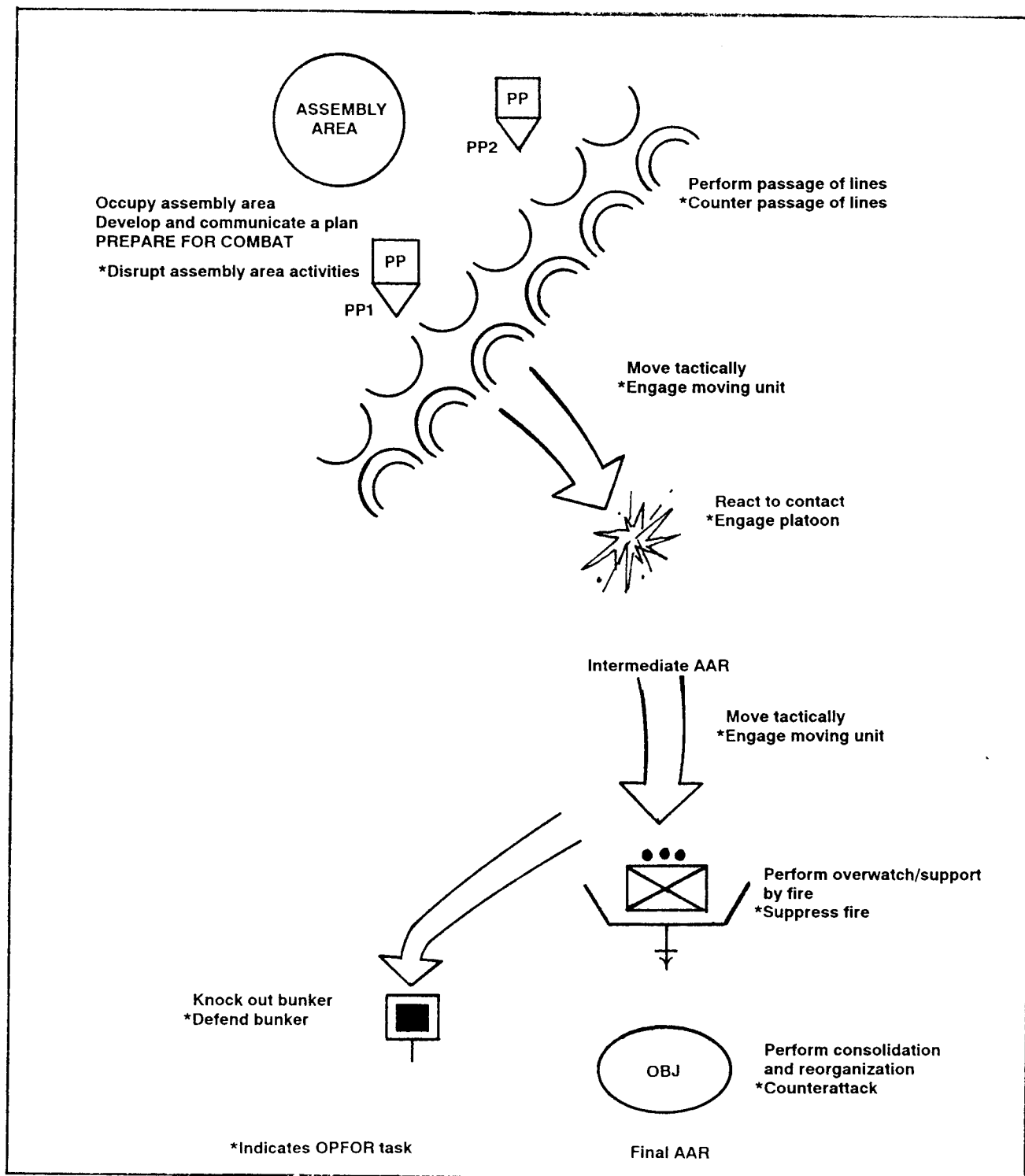


Figure 4-2. Graphic scenario of task performance.

(2) This exercise begins with the receipt of a company FRAGO by the platoon and ends after consolidation and reorganization. An AAR should be held after completing the support by fire task and after consolidation and reorganization. A final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, portions of the exercise should be performed until the platoon's performance is satisfactory. Table 4-1 provides a recommended sequence of T&EOs and time for each portion of the STX.

| EVENT | ACTION | ESTIMATED TIME |
|-------|--|----------------|
| 1 | Occupy Assembly Area | 1.0 hr |
| 2 | Develop and Communicate a Plan | 2.0 hrs |
| *** | Prepare for Combat | |
| 3 | Perform Passage of Lines | 30 min |
| 4 | Move Tactically | 1.0 hr |
| 5 | React to Contact | 5 min |
| 6 | Intermediate AAR | 20 min |
| 7 | Move Tactically | 1.0 hr |
| 8 | Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire | 2.0 hrs |
| 9 | Knock Out a Bunker | 2.0 hrs |
| 10 | Perform Consolidation and Reorganization | 1.0 hr |
| 11 | Final AAR | 45 min |
| * | Maintain Operations Security | |

** Total Time 11 hours, 40 min

* These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.

** Additional time is required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.

*** Conduct Precombat Checks is conducted simultaneously with Develop and Communicate a Plan.

Table 4-1. Sequence of events and time for STX.

e. Special Situation.

(1) Your platoon is part of a company in a secure assembly area where the platoon receives the FRAGO to attack (Figure 4-3, page 4-8).

(2) The company commander has ordered your platoon to lift your supporting fires. A sister platoon is consolidating on the objective when it receives fire from a bunker. The company commander orders your platoon to knock out the bunker.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

1. **SITUATION.**
 - a. *Enemy Forces.* The enemy is at 60 to 70 percent strength. He is preparing to counterattack. The enemy is expected to use air-delivered or artillery-delivered nonpersistent nerve agent.
 - b. *Friendly Forces.* (**Battalion designation**) The infantry attacks (**date/time group**) to destroy enemy forces at Objective (____) to disrupt the enemy counterattack.
2. **MISSION.** (____) Company destroys the enemy force at Objective DELTA (**grid**) NLT (**date/time**) to prevent the enemy from establishing a heavily fortified defense.
3. **EXECUTION.** (**Intent**) (Destroy enemy supply and transport that will support his planned counterattack.)
 - a. *Concept of the Operation.* (See Overlay.)
 - (1) **Maneuver.** Main attack to seize Objective (____)(**grid**) and destroy enemy supply trains. Overwatch/support by fire (another) Platoon's attack on Objective (____) Defeat enemy units in your zone of action to prevent reinforcement of or escape from Objective DELTA.
 - (2) **Fires.** Priority of fire to (another) Platoon.
 - b. *Tasks to Maneuver Units.*
 - (1) (**Another**) Platoon. Perform passage of lines using Passage Point 2.
 - (2) (**Evaluated**) Platoon. Perform passage of lines using Passage Point 1. Be prepared to assume the main attack, on order.
 - (3) (**Another**) Platoon. Perform passage of lines using Passage Point 2.
 - c. *Coordinating Instructions.*
 - (1) Company RP is (**grid**).
 - (2) Company linkup point is (**grid**).
 - (3) Alternate company linkup point is (**grid**).

Figure 4-3. Example of a fragmentary order for STX.

4. **Support Requirements.**

- a. *Minimum trainers/evaluators:* This exercise can be conducted by the company commander or platoon leader who will be the trainer and primary evaluator. At least one other controller or evaluator is required with the OPFOR. Another platoon being trained or evaluated should be used as the platoon making the main attack on the supply site. This platoon will need an additional trainer or evaluator.
- b. *Vehicles/communications:* Those organic to the platoon. Two or three vehicles or trailers should be in the OPFOR supply site.
- c. *Opposing force.* The OPFOR ground force should at least be a reinforced squad.

d. *Maneuver area.* A training area with at least 15 by 4 kilometers for infiltration, cross-country movement, and several locations for supply sites with a bunker is desired. The terrain should offer multiple, covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to a “geographical” or “school solution” does not allow evaluation of the platoon’s ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select covered and concealed positions.

e. *Consolidated support requirements:* This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-2.

| AMMUNITION | DODAC | BASIC LOAD | |
|--|----------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| 5.56-mm | 1305A080 | 60 rounds each rifle | |
| 5.56-mm | 1305A075 | 200 rounds each M249 | |
| ATWESS cartridge | 1370L367 | 4 (Viper) (for LAW) 3 each Dragon | |
| Hand grenade, body, M69 | 1330G811 | 2 each rifleman | |
| Hand grenade fuze (practice) | 1330G878 | 2 each rifleman | |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst M115A2 | 1370L594 | 20 each exercise | |
| Simulator, hand grenade M116-series | 1370L601 | 20 each exercise | |
| OTHER ITEMS | | | |
| Batteries | | | |
| BA 3090 (9-volt) | | 140 each | |
| MILES EQUIPMENT | PLATOON | EVALUATORS | OPFOR |
| M16 system | 32 | 2 | 15 |
| Dragon/Javelin | 2 | | 2 |
| M249 SAW MILES transmitter | 6 | | |
| Controller guns | | 2 | |
| Small-arms alignment fixture | | 1 | |

Table 4-2. Consolidated support requirements for STX.

5. T&EO Sequence.

Table 4-3 lists the T&EOs, in Chapter 5, used for evaluating this STX.

| TASK/FUNCTION | TASK NUMBER | PAGE |
|--|-------------|-------|
| Occupy Assembly Area | 7-3/4-1136 | 5-67 |
| Develop and Communicate a Plan | 7-3/4-1605 | 5-227 |
| Prepare for Combat | 7-3/4-1606 | 5-237 |
| Perform Passage of Lines | 7-3/4-1125 | 5-86 |
| Move Tactically | 7-3/4-1134 | 5-71 |
| Perform Overwatch/Support by Fire | 7-3/4-1108 | 5-18 |
| Knock Out a Bunker | 7-3/4-1113 | 5-27 |
| Perform Consolidation and Reorganization | 7-3/4-1607 | 5-242 |
| Maintain Operations Security | 7-3/4-1409 | 5-193 |

Table 4-3. T&EOs used in evaluating STX.

**INFANTRY PLATOON
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
DEFEND**

1. Objective.

This example STX trains collective, leader, and individual tasks. It provides additional training and evaluation of the platoon's operation, Defend.

2 Interface. This STX is supported by the following battle drill: React to Contact.

3. Training.

a. *Guidance.* The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the critical soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The individual tasks listed in each T&EO should be used. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 11B and the common tasks soldier's manual. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess the soldier's proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards, and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes SDT, common tasks tests, and commander's evaluation.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the critical collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and operation as well as other operations are in the operation-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 and defend operation outline in Chapter 3.

(3) Leader training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the critical individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Training is not limited to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussions on how to plan the exercise and how to implement platoon SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercise without troops or command field exercise allows the leader to train on the ground, practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (See FM 25-101, pages C-3 and C-5.)

(e) Simulations and games to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (See DA Pamphlet 350-100.)

b. *Training tips.* Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX.

(1) First, know the requirements for performing a passage of lines (FM 7-8, page 3-5), performing tactical movement (FM 7-8, Section III), and performing a defense (FM 7-8, Section V).

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that time-consuming mistakes are not made.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using several options.

(a) Indirect fire for this exercise may be provided by using artillery simulators. If artillery simulators are not used, the evaluator can announce "Incoming" to indicate engagement by indirect fire.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or live fire, but the use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(c) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(d) The exercise may be conducted under all environment conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC. This scenario involves an active NBC environment.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities.

(e) At least one evaluator should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary.

(f) The OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This aids soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems.

c. *Training enhancers.* This STX requires the platoon to perform a passage of lines, move tactically, and perform a defense. A passage of lines requires extensive reconnaissance and coordination by the leaders.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in this STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without NVDs.

(2) This STX can be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

d. *General situation.* The exercise scenario is as follows:

(1) The latest INTSUMs indicated that enemy forces are expected to use a high-speed avenue to counterattack the approach that is dominated by a small, built-up area containing strongly constructed buildings. The enemy has the capability for indirect fire, CAS, and chemicals. A defense in and around the town is necessary to deny the enemy the use of the avenue

of approach. Your platoon, as part of a larger force, is ordered to occupy and prepare defensive positions that overlook the avenue of approach. You have indirect fire available.

(2) This exercise begins with the receipt of an OPORD to perform a passage of lines and movement to contact and ends with the establishment of a hasty fighting position. An AAR should be conducted after the passage of lines and a final AAR conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, portions of the exercise should be performed until the platoon's performance is satisfactory.

e. Special Situation.

(1) Your platoon is part of a company in an assembly area when you receive a warning order to prepare for a movement to contact. (Figure 4-4, page 4-14, illustrates the graphic scenario of task performance in this exercise.)

(2) Thirty minutes after receiving the warning order, you receive the operation order (Figure 4-5, page 4-15).

(3) Table 4-4, page 4-16, provides a recommended sequence of T&EOs and time for each portion of the STX. The sequence of events is not established as tactical doctrine; it is only a guide. The commander builds his own STXs based on local training guidance, assessment of unit strengths and weaknesses, location, readiness posture, and factors of METT-T. (Times vary according to terrain, training time, and other factors associated with the training unit.)

(4) Your platoon has reacted to fire when you are ordered to occupy a hasty fighting position and await further orders.

4. Support Requirements.

a. *Minimum trainers/evaluators:* This exercise can be conducted by the company commander or platoon leader who will be the trainer and primary evaluator.

b. *Vehicles/communications:* Those organic to the platoon.

c. *Opposing force:* The OPFOR should be platoon strength for the defense portion of the STX. (See paragraph 3b(5) for further OPFOR guidance.)

d. *Maneuver area:* Depending on the local training area, a training area with at least 10 by 2 kilometers for cross-country movement and the establishment of a hasty fighting position are desired. The terrain should offer multiple, covered and concealed routes. Using terrain that limits the leader to a "geographical" or "school solution" does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select covered and concealed routes.

e. *Consolidated support requirements:* This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-5, page 4-15.

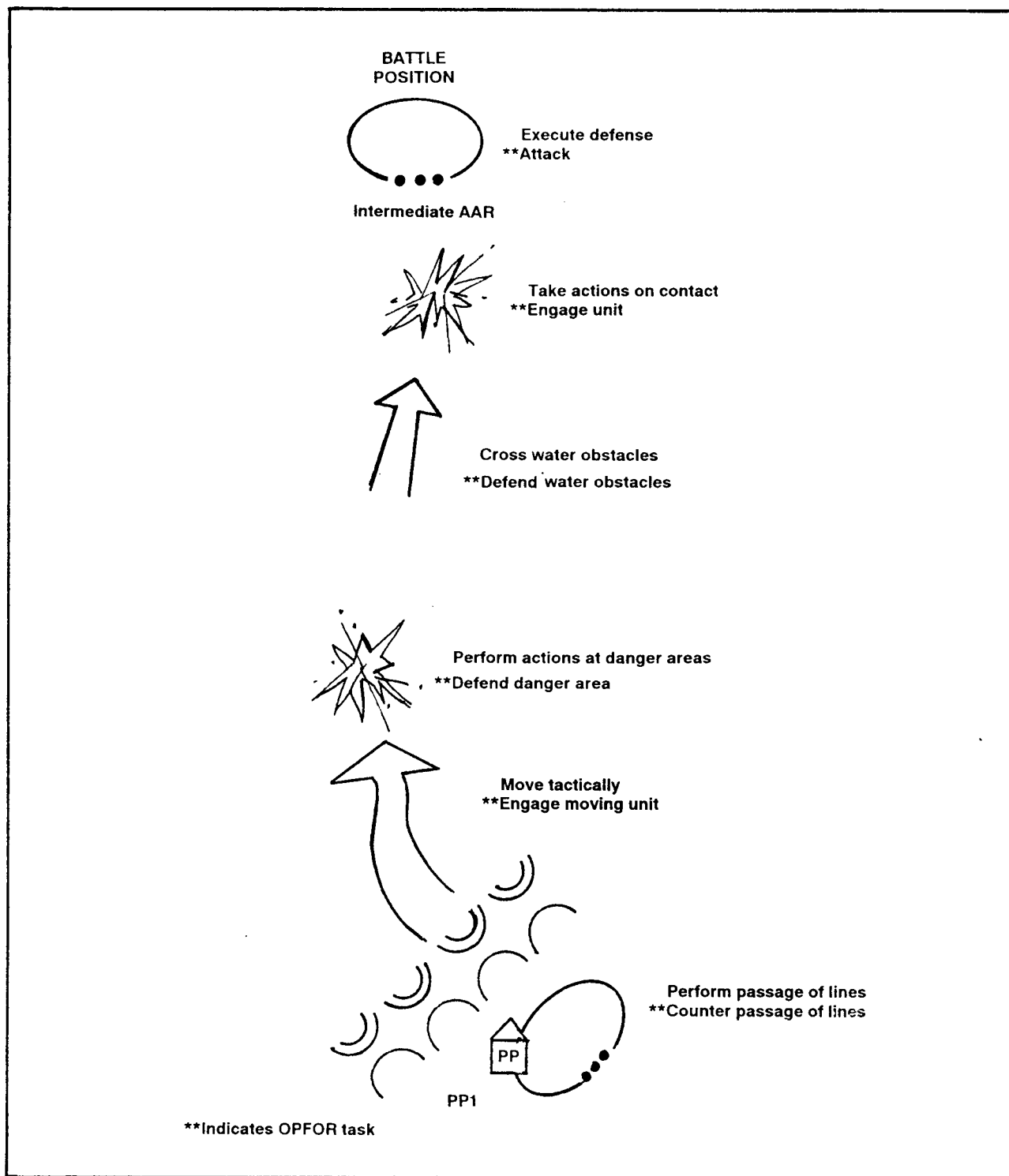


Figure 4-4. Graphic scenario of STX.

OPERATION ORDER

1. SITUATION

- a. *Enemy Forces.* Contact with the enemy has been broken. He has withdrawn deep (____), is being reinforced (____), and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. Latest INTSUMs indicated that the enemy may have several platoon-size combat outposts in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outposts are at 60 to 70 percent strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be at full strength.
- b. *Friendly Forces.* (____) Battalion conducts a passage of lines and defends along Phase Line Oak; be prepared to continue movement forward of Phase Line Oak, on order.
 - (1) Missions of units on left and right (as required).
 - (2) (____) Battalion is deployed in a defensive position along the forward edge of the battle area, coordinates (____) to coordinates (____).
 - (3) Supporting fires (____) Battery, (____) Battalion is in direct support.
- c. *Attachments and Detachments.* None.

2. **MISSION** (____) Company occupies BP 3-1 in the vicinity of Phase Line Oak NLT (date/time) to block enemy forces on Route GREEN in order to prevent the enemy from counterattacking into the battalion sector.

3. EXECUTION

- a. *Concept of the Operation.* (See overlay.) (Developed by the trainer.)
 - (1) Maneuver. (____) Platoon destroys the lead element to cause the enemy to deploy. (____) Platoon, main effort, destroys the enemy in EA (____) to prevent the enemy from counterattacking into the battalion sector. (____). Platoon blocks enemy forces attacking to envelop the main effort.
 - (2) Fire support. Priority of fire (your) Platoon. Your platoon has one 81-mm mortar priority target.
- b. *Tasks to Maneuver Units.*
 - (1) (____) Platoon, occupy BP (____) NLT (____). Establish an OP in the vicinity of (____).
 - (2) (____) Platoon, main effort, occupy BP (____) NLT (____). Establish an OP in the vicinity of (____). Orient fires in EA (____).
 - (3) (____) Platoon, occupy BP (____) NLT (____). Construct a wire obstacle in the vicinity of (____). Establish an OP in the vicinity of (____).
- c. *Coordinating Instructions.*
 - (1) Report all enemy contact.
 - (2) Report crossing all phase lines.
 - (3) MOPP status ____; enemy chemical attack is expected.

Figure 4-5. Example of an extract from an OPORD for the STX.

OPERATION ORDER

- (4) Air defense status is YELLOW, WEAPONS HOLD.
- (5) Additional information, as required.
- 4. **SERVICE AND SUPPORT**
IAW the battalion SOP.
- 5. **COMMAND AND SIGNAL**
 - a. *Command.* Initially, company CP will be traveling center of company wedge.
 - b. *Signal.* Current SOI in effect.

Figure 4-5. Example of an extract from an OPOrd for the STX (continued).

| EVENT | ACTION | ESTIMATED TIME |
|--|---------------------------------|----------------|
| 1 | Perform Passage of Lines | 1.0 hr |
| 2 | Move Tactically | 30 min |
| 3 | Perform Actions at Danger Areas | 10 min |
| 4 | Cross Water Obstacle | 30 min |
| 5 | React to Contact | 15 min |
| 6 | Intermediate AAR | 25 min |
| 7 | Execute Defense | 6.0 hr |
| 8 | Conduct Final AAR | 1.0 hr |
| * | Maintain Operations Security | |
| <p style="text-align: right;">** Total Time 9 hours 50 minutes</p> <p>* These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</p> <p>** Additional time is required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</p> | | |

Table 4-4. Sequence of events and time for STX.

| AMMUNITION | DODAC | BASIC LOAD | |
|--|----------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| 5.56-mm | 130A080 | 150 rounds each rifle | |
| 5.56-mm | 1305A075 | 200 rounds each M249 | |
| ATWESS cartridge | 1370L367 | 4 (Viper) (for LAW) 3 each Dragon | |
| Hand grenade, body, M69 | 1330G811 | 2 each rifleman | |
| Hand grenade fuze (practice) | 1330G878 | 2 each rifleman | |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst M115A2 | 1370L594 | 20 each exercise | |
| Simulator, hand grenade M116-series | 1370L601 | 20 each exercise | |
| OTHER ITEMS | | | |
| Batteries | | | |
| BA 3090 (9-volt) | | 288 each | |
| MILES EQUIPMENT | PLATOON | EVALUATORS | OPFOR |
| M16 system | 32 | | 5 |
| Dragon/Javelin | 2 | | 2 |
| M249 SAW MILES transmitter | 6 | | |
| Controller guns | | 2 | |
| Small-arms alignment fixture | | 1 | |

Table 4-5. Consolidated support requirements for STX.

5. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-6 lists the T&EOs, in chapter 5, used for evaluating this STX.

| TASK/FUNCTION | TASK NUMBER | PAGE |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| Develop and Communicate a Plan | 7-3/4-1605 | 5-227 |
| Prepare for Combat | 7-3/4-1606 | 5-237 |
| Perform Passage of Lines | 7-3/4-1125 | 5-88 |
| Move Tactically | 7-3/4-1134 | 5-71 |
| Perform Actions at Danger Areas | 7-3/4-1135 | 5-78 |
| Cross Water Obstacles | 7-3/4-1131 | 5-144 |
| Execute Defense | 7-3/4-1115 | 5-60 |
| Maintain Operations Security | 7-3/4-1409 | 5-193 |

Table 4-6. T&EOs used in evaluating STX.

ARTEP 7-8 MTP (Chapter 5) RTF

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

03-3-C201.07-2300

Operate in an NBC Environment

Status: Active

Condition: The company performs combat operations. The enemy or friendly higher echelon can employ nuclear weapons, persistent and nonpersistent chemical agents as well as biological agents. The battalion S2 indicates that the enemy is planning a chemical in the area of operations. Battalion headquarters directs subordinate units to take appropriate actions to reduce the effects of the attack. The company must cross a chemically contaminated area. Battalion provides a map overlay and and/or NBC-5 report of the contaminated area. Time is available and the tactical situation provides an opportunity for decontamination operations. A nearby decontamination site has been selected. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The company maintains a combat-effective force to fight after a chemical. The company is delayed no more than 20 minutes because of an enemy chemical attack or contamination. Preparation efforts must be completed before the effects of a chemical attack reach the company's location. The company protects personnel, mission-essential equipment, food, and water. The company continues its assigned mission. The company crosses the contaminated area without delay to the mission. The company performs a hasty decontamination of essential equipment, weapons, and contaminated soldiers. Soldiers stay in MOPP4 until the company commander gives an all-clear report. Decontamination is completed within six hours of being contaminated. The company maintains enough personnel and equipment to remain combat effective for follow-on operations. Collateral damage is minimized.

WARNING

DURING DECONTAMINATION OPERATIONS, DO NOT APPLY DS2 ON SKIN, STB, OR STB CONTAINERS. DS2 MAY CAUSE BURNS OR FIRES.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The company commander obtains NBC information from the higher headquarters S2 or NBC officer to plan his operations. He obtains, as a minimum--<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Enemy chemical weapons capability.b. Types of chemical being used.c. Contaminated areas and types of contamination.* 2. The commander conducts an NBC estimate (FM 3-100, Chapter 7).<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Uses climatic data and weather forecast to identify critical NBC concerns on the terrain in the company area of operations.b. Analyzes terrain based on the impact of friendly or enemy use of chemical weapons or smoke.<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) Identifies areas where deficiencies in cover and concealment may be augmented by smoke.(2) Locates water sources for possible decontamination sites.c. Analyzes information from the S2 to assess the enemy's capabilities for NBC delivery, obscurants, and flame weapons. Develops PIR to confirm his estimate. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Conducts a vulnerability analysis <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Locations of forces and resources. (2) Impact of NBC on each course of action. (3) Impact of NBC on civilians. (4) Chemical units available to support decontamination, NBC reconnaissance, or smoke operations. (5) State of training and ability of the unit to meet the shock and stress of an NBC attack. e. Selects the best use of NBC defense. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Use of obscurants. (2) Use of flame weapons. (3) Locations of decontamination sites. (4) Controls the movement of contaminated units. (5) Determines MOPP levels and where MOPP gear will be stored or carried. f. Ensures control measures and fire support plans support the maneuver plan. 3. The commander plans the company routes-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. To avoid or minimize contamination. b. To avoid planned friendly or known nuclear or chemical strikes. 4. The platoon leader conducts troop leading procedures based on company commander's estimate of effects of friendly or enemy use of nuclear or chemical weapons or smoke. 5. The company/platoon maintain NBC equipment and supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintain NBC equipment and supplies IAW MTOE, TOE, TMs, and SOPs. b. Maintain enough supplies on hand (vehicles, unit trains) for basic skills hasty decontamination and for 24-hour survival. 6. The commander prescribes the company MOPP level based on the threat, mission, and environmental conditions. 7. The company performs chemical monitoring. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Plans chemical surveillance. b. Performs chemical monitoring actions IAW FM 3-3, Chapter 5. 8. The platoon improves positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares and uses overhead cover on defensive positions. b. Directs and implements actions to increase personnel protection consistent with the mission and tactical situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Monitors personnel combat effectiveness IAW performance-degradation data outlined in FM 3-4, Appendix A. (2) Establishes work and rest periods for personnel to match current temperatures and type of work (light, moderate, or heavy) IAW FM 3-4. 9. The company CP disseminates warning of a friendly or chemical attack to all elements. 10. The company and platoons react to chemical attack. 11. The company directs and coordinates operational decontamination. 12. The platoons conduct operational decontamination. 13. The company and platoons conduct thorough decontamination. 14. The company reorganizes as required. 15. The company prepares to continue the mission. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

03-3-C202.07-2300

Prepare for Chemical Attack (Company/Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The unit is conducting tactical operations. The unit receives a warning order (WARNO) to prepare for a chemical attack. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

Standard: Unit members react to the chemical attack within 15 seconds. Soldiers put on their protective masks (with hood) and give the alarm. They assume MOPP 4 or put the vehicle over pressurization system into operation within 8 minutes. The unit chemical-agent detector kit and chemical alarm are put into operation. Weapons and equipment are prepared, as required. The unit then continues the assigned mission.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. Unit leader issues warning order.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Orders members to put on chemical protective overgarments, overboots, mask with hood, and gloves (MOPP 4).b. Company members use the buddy-team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.c. Company members cover their individual equipment and weapons, using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expendable or readily decontaminated.d. Company members attach M9 paper to overgarments and to supplies.* 2. The vehicle commanders and drivers prepare vehicles.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Store water, rations, and equipment not being used in the vehicle or undercover.b. Close all hatches (dependent on the factors of METT-TC).c. Place covers on crew served weapons (dependent on the tactical situation).3. The company prepares defensive positions or shelters. The company locates and selects existing or reinforceable facilities, such as caves, ditches, ravines, culverts, overpasses, tunnels, and empty ammunition storage bunkers, for use as defensive positions or for protective shelters.* 4. The leader ensures designated personnel conduct monitoring and results are sent to higher headquarters.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Operates the chemical agent alarm upwind when the unit is stationary.b. Conducts monitoring periodically with a chemical-agent detector kit.c. Conducts monitoring continuously with a chemical alarm.* 5. The leaders inspect to ensure the company personnel and equipment are prepared for a chemical attack.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Decontamination equipment is available and serviceable.b. The company is capable of operating in MOPP 4 for six hours. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

03-3-C203.07-2300

React to a Chemical Attack

Status: Active

Condition: The unit is deployed in MOPP 2. Intelligence indicates the enemy has initiated chemical warfare. Automatic alarm sounds, or detector paper changes color causing the unit to react.

This task is always performed in MOPP4.

Standard: Unit personnel sound the alarm (vocal/non-vocal), immediately assume MOPP 4, and utilize available shelter immediately to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit elements react to the chemical alarm within 15 seconds.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Commanders and leaders ensure soldiers react to the sound of the chemical agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical/biological attack.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. CP spreads the chemical alarm to all elements IAW the unit SOP.b. Personnel put on protective masks with hoods within 15 seconds.c. Personnel give the alarm: vocal/non-vocal.d. All personnel use collective protective shelters (if available) or any other suitable shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination.e. Personnel decontaminate exposed skin within one minute of contact and before going in MOPP4.f. All personnel assume MOPP 4 as soon as possible.g. Leaders check soldiers to ensure protective measures are followed.2. NBC teams and other designated personnel initiate chemical monitoring IAW unit SOP to:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Determine the type(s) of chemical(s) employed.b. Determine the extent of contamination.3. Soldiers take additional protective measures.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Administer a nerve-agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning, if applicable.b. Administer self-aid with nerve agent antidote, if applicable.c. Conduct skin decontamination.d. Perform immediate (Buddy or combat life saver) first aid on all casualties in minutes or when the tactical situation permits.e. Conduct wipe-down and perform spray-down of personal equipment with M291 or M280 decon kits within 15 minutes of attack.f. Monitor their buddies IAW the unit SOP for signs of chemical poisoning.g. Protect exposed equipment and supplies.h. Monitor the area by testing with detector kits.i. Use prevention procedures such as marking contaminated areas.4. Commanders and leaders continue mission or request movement to alternate location.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Determine and disseminate the area of contamination and reports or directs action, or both.b. Use prevention procedures such as marking contaminated areas. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Ensure contaminated elements do not move through uncontaminated elements. Elements do not move through contaminated areas unless required by the tactical situation. If they do, all elements are in MOPP4. 5. Commanders and leaders initiate unmasking procedures when the chemical agent detector kit indicates negative results. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Check the area by selecting two or three individuals to begin unmasking procedures. b. Move these individuals to a shady area and break the seal of their masks. c. Ensure test personnel remain unmasked for 5 minutes, then remask and clear their masks. d. For 10 minutes, observe test personnel for symptoms of illness. e. If no symptoms of illness are detected, report "ALL CLEAR." f. Company unmask. g. Leaders ensure casualties are provided medical care. h. Commander reports casualties. 6. Leaders initiate unmasking procedures without a chemical detector kit, using M8 detector paper. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Choose two or three individuals to begin unmasking procedures in a shady area. b. Ensure individuals begin by taking a deep breath, breaking the seal of their masks, keeping their eyes open wide for 15 seconds, then clearing and resealing their masks. c. Observe these individuals for 10 minutes. d. If no symptoms develop, have them repeat the unmasking step and take two or three deep breaths, then clear and If no symptoms develop, have them repeat the unmasking step and take two or three deep breaths, then clear and reseal their masks. e. Observe individuals for another 10 minutes. f. If no symptoms develop, have individuals unmask for 5 minutes, then remask. g. If no symptoms appear within 10 minutes of remasking, announce "ALL CLEAR." h. Company unmask. 7. Commander monitors the situation and adjusts MOPP level as the NBC situation dictates. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures individuals remain at the directed MOPP level. b. Ensures no casualties occur to elements not in the initial area of strike. Contaminated elements do not move through uncontaminated elements. Elements do not move through contaminated areas unless required by the tactical situation. If they do, they are all in MOPP4. c. Ensures periodic chemical monitoring. 8. XO, 1SG, or chemical NCO requests replenishment of chemical defense equipment and supplies through the company supply sergeant. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requests replacement supplies. b. Distributes replacement supplies. 9. Commander submits NBC 1 report to higher headquarters immediately. 10. Company continues the mission or requests permission to move out of the contaminated area. 11. Company executes operational decontamination, resupply of replacements, and MOPP exchange for all contaminated elements six hours of being contaminated. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task
03-3-C206.07-2300
Prepare for Nuclear Attack (Company/Platoon)
Status: Active

Condition: The company receives a STRIKWARN message or warning and prepares for a nuclear attack. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

Standard: Within the time specified in the STRIKWARN message, unit vehicles and equipment are prepared and personnel are in covered positions.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The unit prepares for a nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Company CP sends warning of a friendly or enemy nuclear strike to all elements. The time of the friendly burst is encoded unless it is so short that the message cannot be encoded and decoded. b. Commander establishes and checks backup command and control procedures. c. XO is in a position to function in the alternate company CP. d. Unit leaders instruct all personnel to prepare for a nuclear blast . <p>2. Platoon and sections prepare for nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Leaders deploy their units for the best dispersion the tactical situation will permit. b. Leaders check to ensure individuals know the appropriate action when an attack occurs. c. Leaders ensure individuals know the appropriate action when an attack occurs d. Leaders zero dosimeters (two are normally issued to each platoon) and initiate periodic monitoring. e. Members place vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding. f. Drivers position vehicles so that the front of the vehicles are toward the expected direction of the blast. <p>3. The company prepares defensive positions or shelters. The company locates and selects existing or reinforceable facilities, such as caves, ditches, ravines, culverts, overpasses, tunnels, and empty ammunition storage bunkers, for use as defensive positions or for protective shelters.</p> <p>4. Unit members prepare vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Improve shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. They add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tent in the direction of the strike, and cover openings, or position them away from the strike. b. Place one or more layers of sandbags on top of each vehicle (offers additional protection from gamma radiation). c. Wet down the sandbags (enhances neutron radiation shielding and protects sandbags from thermal damage). d. Turn off and disconnect nonessential electronic equipment. Tie down essential antennas and take down nonessential antennas and antenna leads. (In the offense, one radio is left on.) | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Stow all water, rations, crew served weapons, and M60's inside the vehicles. f. Tie down all loose equipment inside the vehicles. (This prevents equipment from being thrown about by the blast.) g. Secure flammable and explosive items. h. Zero dosimeters, if available. <p>5. The drivers prepare vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Close all hatches. b. Turn off the engines and MASTER switches. c. Lock the brakes. d. Close periscope covers. e. Close the driver's periscopes. f. Make sure the vehicles are dug in (hull defilade) or placed in trenches or in cuts in roadways. <p>6. Unit members prepare themselves.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Position themselves as low as possible within the vehicles and fighting positions. b. Wear their helmets with chin strap secured. c. Brace themselves for the blast. <p>* 7. Leaders inspect to ensure that the unit is prepared for nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Vehicles are ready. b. Equipment is secured. c. Personnel are prepared. d. Medical personnel are prepared. <p>8. Unit reacts to nuclear attack (initiated by friendly or enemy).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Leaders act immediately to protect all personnel from the blast, thermal effects, and initial radiation of the detonation. b. Company initiates radiological monitoring IAW unit SOP. c. All company personnel monitor their buddies for signs of radiation sickness. d. Casualties (blast, thermal, and radiation) are treated and evacuated IAW unit SOP and orders. e. Platoon reports the total personnel dose periodically to the company CP in accordance with the unit SOP. f. Company CP consolidates the platoon reports and forwards an NBC 1 report to the higher headquarters CP. g. Company CP maintains radiation exposure status (RES) by platoon and forwards the RES by platoon to the higher headquarters CP in accordance with the unit SOP. h. During mission analysis, the commander uses the OEG and platoon RES as factors in selecting units for missions. i. To compute OEG, the company requests and receives guidance from the higher headquarters CP on the degree of risk established by the higher headquarters commander. j. If the unit receives fallout, the commander determines whether the company should remain in position or move based on mission, tactical situation, radiation dose received, dose rate, and battalion guidance. <p>9. Company commander recommends to the higher headquarters commander that the company either remain in position or move, and acts on the higher headquarters commander's decision.</p> <p>10. As soon as the tactical situation permits, the company performs hasty fallout decontamination.</p> | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

03-3-C223.07-2300

React to Nuclear Attack (Company/Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: While conducting tactical operations as part of a larger force, platoon/squad members observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom-shaped cloud or the platoon/squad receives a STRIKEWARN of a friendly nuclear strike. Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon/squad takes actions to minimize the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission. The platoon reports to higher headquarters. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI. Collateral damage is minimized.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. If time permits, mounted platoon elements take immediate protective action, to include the following:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Position vehicles behind the best cover with the front of vehicle facing the blast and the main gun pointing away from the vehicle.b. Close and locks all vehicle hatches.c. Lock the brakes.d. Stows the TOW launcher (if applicable).e. Turns off all radios as well as turret and master power.f. Shuts down all engines.g. Secures loose equipment inside the vehicle.h. Secures all exterior components (water cans, duffel bags, and antennas) inside the vehicle.i. Wears helmet (CVC/Kevlar) and protect eyes.2. Dismounted soldiers take immediate protective action.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Drop face down to the ground with their heads pointed toward the direction of the blast, all exposed skin covered, and eyes closed.b. Remain on the ground until blast effects have passed.* 3. Platoon leader implements SOPs to accomplish the following tasks.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Reestablishes communications with all platoon elements and company.b. Prepares and forwards NBC-1 report to company TOC. <p>NOTE: The report must include lines BRAVO, DELTA, HOTEL, and either CHARLIE or FOXTROT.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><ol style="list-style-type: none">c. Implements continuous monitoring.d. Sends updated SITREPs to company TOC as necessary.4. The company initiates radiological monitoring IAW the unit SOP.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. All company personnel monitor their buddies for signs of radiation sickness.b. Casualties (blast, thermal, and radiation) are treated and evacuated IAW the unit SOP and orders.c. The platoons report personnel total dose periodically to the company CP IAW the unit SOP. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. The company CP consolidates the platoon reports and forwards an NBC 1 report to the higher headquarters CP. e. The company CP maintains radiation exposure status (RES) by platoon and forwards the RES by platoon to the higher headquarters CP IAW the unit SOP. f. The company CP requests and receives guidance from the higher headquarters CP on the OEG established by the higher headquarters commander. <p>5. The company consolidates and reorganizes, if required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. If applicable, establishes chain of command. b. Secures and organizes equipment. c. Identifies, treats, and evacuates injured personnel. d. Conducts essential maintenance. e. Evacuates fatalities. <p>6. If the unit receives fallout, the commander determines whether the company should remain in position or move based on the mission, tactical situation, radiation dosage received, current dosage rate, and guidance from higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The company continues radiation monitoring and reports IAW the unit SOP. b. Personnel minimize exposure by using earth-cover shielding as much as possible. c. As soon as the tactical situation permits, the company directs platoons to conduct operational decontamination. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

03-3-C224.07-3000

Conduct Operational Decontamination

Status: Active

Condition: While the platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a higher headquarters, the enemy effectively employs NBC weapons against the platoon, resulting in contamination. The platoon reacts to the attack and is required to conduct immediate and operational decontamination before continuing its mission. The battalion task force power-driven decontamination equipment (PDDE) team is on standby in the task force field trains, and the task force NBC officer and/or NCO are available to assist the platoon/squad. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon performs immediate decontamination and conducts tactical movement to the decontamination site. The platoon performs operational decontamination, effectively decontaminating all areas without spreading contamination or suffering additional casualties. The platoon/squad maintains security throughout the operation.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Platoon conducts immediate decontamination.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Conducts skin decontamination within one minute after being contaminated.<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) Conducts chemical decontamination using the M258A1/M291 kit.(2) Conducts biological decontamination using soap and water.(3) Conducts radiological decontamination using soap and water.b. Assumes MOPP 4.c. Conducts personal wipedown. The following steps apply:<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) Wipedown begins within 15 minutes after first exposure.(2) Contaminated soldiers wipe down masks, hoods, gloves, helmets, and other essential equipment using the M258A1/M291 kit.(3) Sections/squads conduct chemical/biological wipedown.<ol style="list-style-type: none">(a) Soldiers decontaminate personal weapons, paying particular attention to plastic handguards and stocks.(b) Avoid sharp objects that could cause rips or tears in garments.(4) Sections/squads conduct radiological wipedown.<ol style="list-style-type: none">(a) Exposed soldiers brush off any dry contaminants from their LBE, mask carrier, clothing, and gear.(b) Soldiers avoid spreading contamination into clean areas.d. Removes gross contamination such as mud, dirt, or dust from vehicles using available items (sticks, branches, shovels, and brooms).e. Crews conduct operator's spraydown.<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) Conducts chemical/biological spraydown.<ol style="list-style-type: none">(a) Spraydown, employing the M11 or M113 decontamination apparatus (DAP), begins within 15 minutes after personal wipedown is completed.(b) Scrubs DS2 onto contaminated surfaces and leaves it in place for 30 minutes before removal.(c) Decontaminates only the surfaces crewmen must touch while operating their equipment. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>NOTE: Soap and water are preferred for biological spraydown. If they are not available, DS2 and STB are effective and can be used; however, crews must exercise extreme caution because of their caustic nature. Long-term contact with DS2 can damage all rubberized items. Care should be taken when applying DS2 on equipment to avoid wiring harnesses, electrical equipment, overshoes, and NBC gloves.</p> <p>(2) Conducts radiological spraydown, by using water, but runoff must be strictly controlled with containment ditches.</p> <p>f. Marks the contaminated area.</p> <p>* 2. Platoon Leader or PSG coordinates and plans for operational decontamination.</p> <p>a. Requests decontamination support, to include MOPP gear exchange, IAW unit SOP.</p> <p>b. Notifies company CP of area of decontamination (if not assigned by company commander).</p> <p>c. Verifies location of the decontamination site and movement routes.</p> <p>d. Verifies the arrival time at the decontamination site.</p> <p>e. Coordinates with company commander for relief from current mission.</p> <p>f. Issues movement order and decontamination instructions to the platoon/squad IAW OPORD/FRAGO/unit SOP.</p> <p>3. Platoon/squad conducts tactical movement to the decontamination site and prepares for operational decontamination.</p> <p>a. Moves to the predecontamination staging area (taking precautions if route is contaminated).</p> <p>b. Assumes assigned position within the company team perimeter defense or forms a platoon perimeter defense if operating alone.</p> <p>c. Establishes and maintains local security IAW SOP or commander's guidance.</p> <p>d. Prepares vehicles for washdown.</p> <p>(1) Secures all external equipment.</p> <p>(2) Covers the gun muzzle break.</p> <p>(3) Removes vegetation used as camouflage.</p> <p>(4) Removes large amounts of mud (if necessary).</p> <p>(5) Closes ballistic doors.</p> <p>(6) Closes all vehicle hatches.</p> <p>NOTE: Procedures used to decontaminate chemically, biologically, or radiologically contaminated materials are the same. However, decontaminants differ. Following vehicle preparation, drivers remain with their vehicles. Other soldiers dismount, either at the predecontamination site or at a dismount point, and move (using designated paths only) to the MOPP gear exchange site.</p> <p>4. Platoon performs vehicle decontamination.</p> <p>NOTE: Drivers usually perform this step while other crewmen complete MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>a. Ensures vehicle hatches are closed and secured.</p> <p>b. Follows guidance of site OIC/NCOIC or PDDE crew in moving vehicles to and through decontamination site.</p> <p>c. Assists PDDE crew in decontaminating vehicles as required. Ensures battalion PDDE crew washes vehicle with hot soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes.</p> <p>d. When washdown is completed, moves vehicles to the designated holding area upwind from decontamination site as directed by OIC/NCOIC.</p> <p>e. Suffers no additional NBC casualties.</p> <p>f. Prevents spread of NBC contamination.</p> <p>NOTE: After vehicle decontamination is complete, drivers move to the MOPP gear exchange site and repeat the process as other platoon personnel.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>5. Under supervision of the company team NBC NCO, site OIC/NCOIC, or decontamination team, platoon conducts MOPP gear exchange using buddy system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. If the contaminate is radiological, determines degree and extent of the hazard using the AN/PDR 27. Exposure to less than 0.33 cGy/hr is considered a negligible risk. b. Decontaminate and drop equipment (weapon, helmet, LBE, mask carrier, and personal items) on to noncontaminated suitable ground cloth or plastic sheeting. c. Decontaminate hood and gloves and roll up hood. d. Remove overgarment/overboots. e. Remove gloves. f. Put on clean overgarment/overboots and gloves. <p>NOTE: Clean soldier pulls overgarment/overboots and gloves from bag without touching the outside of the bag.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Secures hood. <p>NOTE: Soldiers reverse buddy roles and repeat MOPP gear exchange process. Buddy decontaminates his gloves before assisting with the hood.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Secures gear. i. Suffers no additional NBC casualties. j. Prevents the spread of NBC contamination. <p>6. Platoon/squad completes decontamination activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Mounts vehicles in designated holding area and moves to post decontamination assembly area. <p>NOTE: Alternate drivers may be used to move vehicles to post decontamination assembly area while primary drivers conduct MOPP gear exchange.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Follows additional guidance of OIC/NCOIC as required. c. Reestablishes security as directed by company commander. d. Continues to monitor NBC situation. e. Conducts periodic detection checks for several hours after decontamination to detect desorbing vapors that could harm crews f. Crews continue to wear gloves while handling decontaminated equipment to prevent direct contact with desorbing agent. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

05-3-0004.07-3103

Breach Obstacle (Infantry/Mech Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon leader is given a FRAGO to conduct an obstacle breach as part of a larger element's attack during a movement to contact, deliberate attack, or hasty attack. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire and CAS available. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. ROE was published.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon leader develops a plan for the platoon breach. The plan is issued to and understood by key personnel. Subordinate leaders are given adequate time to plan. The platoon breaches the obstacle in the time specified by the commander. The platoon maintains security throughout the operation. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. Platoon moves to designated breach position.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Moves along covered and concealed routes, using appropriate technique of movement and formation based on the enemy position.b. Occupies overwatch/Support by Fire (SBF) position.2. Designated squads breach the obstacle.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Moves minimum number of infantrymen forward with equipment necessary to breach.b. Performs actions IAW platoon leader's directives and unit SOP.c. Moves to the far side of the cleared obstacle path and establishes positions to provide overwatch/SBF for the remainder of the platoon and the assault force.d. Notifies platoon leader/PSG the lane is cleared.* 3. Platoon leader reports completion of the breach to the commander.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Reports the obstacle was breached and the platoon is prepared to support the assault force.b. Reports the eight-digit grid coordinates of the entrance and exit for each lane by secure means.c. Reports method(s) used to mark the lane.4. Platoon supports remainder of the breaching operation.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Executes support by fire against known/suspected enemy positions to support movement of the assault force.b. Provides continuously updated reports to the assault force and/or commander.c. Requests indirect fire (including smoke, if necessary) to suppress and/or obscure enemy forces.d. Reacts to enemy contact by initiating appropriate battle drills. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

05-3-0335.07-3443

Emplace a Hasty Protective Mine Field (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon/squad is stationary and is conducting defensive or assembly area operations in a tactical environment. The commander has directed a protective minefield along a probable enemy avenue of approach, or the platoon leader has identified the need for (and the commander has authorized) the emplacement of a hasty protective minefield. Sufficient time is available to the platoon. Enemy contact is not expected while the hasty protective minefield is being emplaced or retrieved. ROE is published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: Platoon/squad emplaces a hasty protective minefield that is observed and covered by fire at all times. The minefield is emplaced by the specified time, has no gaps, and is located to achieve desired effects. The minefield delays, disrupts, restricts, or diverts enemy movement as planned. The minefield is recorded on a DA Form 1355-1-R. The platoon/squad complies with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. Platoon/squad leader plans the emplacement of a hasty protective minefield; either based on METT-TC analysis or as directed by the company commander/platoon leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Confirms/conducts reconnaissance to determine location.b. Ensures minefield location is oriented on the expected enemy avenue of approach and is observed and covered by fire at all times.c. Ensures minefield ties in with terrain and with existing natural and man-made obstacles.d. Verifies/determines time and mines (by type) needed by the platoon/squad (including resources at hand).e. Submits report of intent to place the minefield if the company commander has not directed emplacement. <p>NOTE: The company commander may approve or disapprove emplacement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">f. Requests additional resources as needed/available. <p>2. Platoon leader conducts command and control of operations digitally.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Maintain digital situation awareness.b. Submit reports.c. Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally. <p>* 3. Platoon/squad leader organizes the platoon/squad for emplacement of the minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Designates and positions the overwatch/security element IAW METT-TC.b. Designates personnel as the emplacement team for the minefield. <p>* 4. Platoon/squad leader sends report of initiation of minefield by secure means to the company commander/platoon leader with the following information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Time emplacement began.b. Minefield location.c. Target number (if applicable). <p>5. Platoon/squad conducts installation of a hasty protective minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Identifies landmark and reference point for use in emplacing the minefield (platoon/squad leader). | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>b. Determines the azimuth and distance from the landmark to the reference point (platoon/squad leader). These steps apply:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Annotates landmark grid and description in the tabular remarks block of DA Form 1355-1-R. (2) Records azimuth and distance from the landmark to the reference point. <p>c. Emplacement team moves to the reference point and marks it so that it can be easily identified.</p> <p>d. Emplacement team determines the location of each row of the minefield and selects row marker locations. The team uses these steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determines azimuth and distance from the reference point to first row marker (the first row is the one closest to the friendly forces) and records data on DA Form 1355-1-R. (2) Determines and records the azimuth and distance from the first row marker to the second row marker and continues this process until he reaches the row closest to the enemy (this row is always indicated as row A). (3) Explains how row markers are identified in the identification block on DA Form 1355-1-R. (4) Marks all rows with an object easily identified by the friendly force but not by the enemy. <p>e. Emplacement team determines the location of individual mines. These steps apply:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Positions the end mines on each row 15 to 20 paces from the row marker. (2) Determines the azimuth and distance between mines and records location data on DA Form 1355-1-R. (3) Lays all mines in position on top of the ground; assigns each mine a number to readily identify it in the minefield. (4) Completes the tabular block information on DA Form 1355-1-R. <p>NOTE: Mines are armed and camouflaged after the minefield is completely installed, starting with row A.</p> <p>f. Emplacement team collects and stores safety pins, clips, and shipping plugs pending recovery of the mines. These step apply:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Items can be buried 30 cm from the row markers, reference point, or landmark. (2) Informs platoon/squad members of the storage location and records it in the tabular block remarks section on DA Form 1355-1-R. <p>g. Platoon/squad leader pulls in the security element.</p> <p>h. Platoon/squad leader sends completion report to the company commander/platoon leader IAW unit SOP.</p> <p>i. Classifies DA Form 1355-1-R as secret/NATO secret, sends a copy to the platoon leader/company commander, and retains a copy at the minefield.</p> <p>NOTE: If the platoon/squad transfers or is accepting the minefield, the gaining platoon/squad leader signs and dates the mines transferred block and accepts DA Form 1355-1-R from the previous leader.</p> <p>* 6. Platoon/squad leader designates a retrieval team to recover the hasty protective minefield. These steps apply:</p> <p>NOTE: If possible assigns soldiers who emplaced the minefield to locate and recover mines.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recovers safety pins, clips, and shipping plugs for use in the retrieval. b. Platoon/squad leader establishes near-side and far-side security at the minefield. c. Retrieval team locates and recover mines using these steps: | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>(1) Using DA Form 1355-1-R, locates the mines, starting with the row nearest friendly positions.</p> <p>(2) Disarms, recovers, and stores mines.</p> <p>d. Sends report of change to the platoon leader/company commander IAW unit SOP.</p> | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-2-1170

Report Tactical Information (Infantry Company/Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The unit is operating in a tactical environment and observes enemy activity. The unit has guidance provided by the Rules of Engagement (ROE), Rules of Interaction (ROI), and from Mission Instructions such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and Rules of Interaction. Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and can reduce the combat power. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: All required and available information is reported using the key word SALUTE (situation, activity, location, unit, time and equipment). Information is reported to higher headquarters using the spot report format. The unit complies with the ROE, Mission Instructions, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The company commander/platoon leaders receive reports from platoon leaders/squad leaders using the key word SALUTE to collect essential information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Size: The number of personnel and equipment.b. Activity: What is the enemy doing or the absence of enemy.c. Location: Grid coordinates and direction and speed of movement (if moving).d. Unit: As shown by patches, signs, markings, or uniforms.e. Time: When the activity was observed.f. Equipment: Describes or identifies all equipment. <p>2. Leaders organize the information into spot report format before sending the transmission (writes down the grid coordinates and time).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Who: Observer's identification (call sign).b. What: Size, equipment, and unit, (may add immediate actions by the observer: observing, engaging, or destroyed).c. Where: Location of the observed enemy (six-digit coordinates). (Never use friendly graphics, targets, or reference to friendly positions in the clear.)d. When: The time the action took place.e. Observer's action: outlines his activities, actions, or recommendations (continues to observe; requests permission to assault/engage; requests permission to displace). The lack of enemy is as important as the enemy's presence. The enemy may be concentrating elsewhere. <p>3. The observer sends the report in no more than two transmissions.</p> <p>4. The observer updates the spot report as the situation changes.</p> <p>* 5. The company commander/XO consolidates the reports and sends a spot report to higher headquarters. The company commander should make recommendations to the higher commander as in 2e. above, as it becomes necessary.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 6. The commander ensures that ROE has been disseminated to subordinate units. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1001

Take Action on Contact (Infantry Platoon/Squad)

Status: Inactive

Condition: The platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a larger unit. It makes contact through one of the eight forms of contact (receipt of direct fire, visual contact, receipt of indirect fires, contact with obstacles, contact from threat/unknown air elements, electronic warfare contact, contact in nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) situations, or nonhostile contact). The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon reacts to the contact, deploys as required, and reports the contact to higher headquarters. It develops the situation and recommends a course of action (COA) based on the commander's intent and/or current tactical situation. The platoon executes the chosen/directed COA and reports to higher headquarters. The platoon remains combat effective and is prepared for follow-on missions. The unit complies with the ROE/ROI, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. Collateral damage is minimized.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>1. Platoon deploys and reports.</p> <p>a. Conducts command and control of operations digitally:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Maintain digital situational awareness.(2) Submit digital reports and overlays.(3) Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally. <p>b. Ensures that rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) are disseminated to subordinate personnel.</p> <p>c. Reacts when contact entails direct fire contact .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Element in contact returns fire immediately to destroy or suppress the threat and sends contact report. <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(2) Deploys to covered and concealed positions, if available.(3) Utilizes indirect fire assets, as necessary.(4) Activates on-board self protection measures as appropriate.(5) Conducts battle drills, as necessary.(6) Maintains visual contact with the threat while continuing to develop the situation through reconnaissance or surveillance.(7) Maintains cross-talk with all platoon elements.(8) Platoon leader/platoon sergeant (PSG) sends SPOTREP to higher headquarters. <p>d. Reacts when contact is visual.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>(1) If there is immediate danger from the threat, the element establishing visual contact initiates fires to destroy or suppress the threat, deploys to covered and concealed positions using appropriate battle drill(s), and reports to platoon leader.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>(2) If there is no immediate danger from the threat or the threat is out of direct fire range, the element deploys, maintains visual contact, and reports to platoon leader.</p> <p>(3) Remaining platoon elements deploy to supporting covered and concealed positions, as directed by platoon leader.</p> <p>(4) Platoon leader/PSG sends spot report (SPOTREP) to higher headquarters.</p> <p>e. Reacts when contact is indirect fires (observed or receiving).</p> <p>(1) Elements observing indirect fire use evasive actions to avoid impact area.</p> <p>(2) Elements under fire continue to move quickly to clear impact area.</p> <p>NOTE: Crews immediately close hatches, as necessary.</p> <p>(3) Platoon reacts to chemical/biological attack, if necessary, IAW OPOD/FRAGO and type of incoming rounds.</p> <p>NOTE: Platoon elements immediately conduct NBC reconnaissance.</p> <p>(4) Platoon leader/PSG sends SPOTREP to higher headquarters.</p> <p>(5) If NBC agents were detected, platoon leader/PSG sends follow-up NBC 1 report to higher headquarters.</p> <p>f. Reacts when contact is with an obstacle.</p> <p>(1) Element establishing visual contact with the obstacle deploys to covered and concealed positions and reports to platoon leader.</p> <p>(2) Remaining platoon elements deploy to supporting covered and concealed positions, as directed by platoon leader.</p> <p>NOTE: Crews immediately close hatches, as necessary.</p> <p>(3) Platoon leader calls for immediate smoke on the far side of the obstacle to conceal deployment of the platoon, if required.</p> <p>(4) Platoon leader/PSG sends SPOTREP to higher headquarters.</p> <p>g. Reacts when contact is a threat/unknown air contact.</p> <p>(1) If there is immediate danger from the threat, the element establishing visual contact initiates fires to destroy or suppress the threat, deploys to covered and concealed positions using appropriate battle drill(s), and reports to platoon leader.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>(2) If there is no immediate danger from the threat or the threat is out of direct fire range, the element establishing visual contact, deploys, maintains visual contact, and reports to platoon leader.</p> <p>(3) Remaining platoon elements deploy to supporting covered and concealed positions, as directed by platoon leader.</p> <p>(4) Platoon leader/PSG sends SPOTREP to higher headquarters.</p> <p>h. Reacts when contact is electronic warfare contact (i.e., sensor or radio detection, interception, or direction finding).</p> <p>(1) Element in contact sends SPOTREP to platoon leader.</p> <p>(2) If there is immediate danger from the threat, the element establishing electronic warfare contact deploys to covered and concealed positions using appropriate battle drill(s), and reports to platoon leader.</p> <p>OR</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) If there is no immediate danger from the threat or the threat is out of direct fire range, the element establishing electronic warfare contact maintains contact, and continues to report to the platoon leader. (4) Remaining platoon elements deploy to supporting covered and concealed positions, as directed by platoon leader. (5) Platoon leader/PSG sends SPOTREP to higher headquarters. i. Reacts when contact is NBC contact (i.e., physical or by alert with chemical agent alarms). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) If chemical or biological contact, element in contact masks, sounds alarm, and sends SPOTREP to platoon leader. (2) Platoon takes protective measures against NBC attack/contamination. (3) Platoon elements conduct NBC reconnaissance to determine type and extent of contamination. (4) Platoon leader/PSG sends SPOTREP to higher headquarters. (5) Platoon leader/PSG sends follow-up NBC 1 report to higher headquarters. j. Reacts when contact is nonhostile contact (physical or visual). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Element in contact continues to observe. (2) Remaining platoon elements deploy to supporting covered and concealed positions, as directed by platoon leader. (3) Platoon leader/PSG sends SPOTREP to higher headquarters. * 2. Platoon leader evaluates the situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Element in contact evaluates the situation quickly. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Conduct reconnaissance of the area using a combination of mounted elements, dismounts, and reconnaissance by fire to fully develop the situation. (2) Determine enemy size, composition, activity, orientation, and location of weapon systems. (3) Search for antitank ditches, minefields, wire, or other obstacles that could define a fire sack. (4) Search for the flanks of the enemy and any elements that could mutually support enemy position(s). (5) Based on a fully developed situation, send updated SPOTREP (with possible COAs) to the platoon leader/PSG. b. Platoon leader/PSG analyzes SPOTREPs and other tactical information as required to make an assessment of the situation. c. Platoon leader/PSG directs the actions of elements not in contact in a manner that supports the elements in contact. <p>AND/OR</p> d. Platoon leader and/or PSG directs elements not in contact to continue the mission in accordance with (IAW) the operation order/fragmentary order (OPORD/FRAGO). * 3. Platoon leader develops the situation as required using a combination of techniques. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Chooses fire and maneuver, indirect fire, reconnaissance by fire, or surveillance. b. Ensures platoon's actions allow for survivability and mission accomplishment. c. Sends updated SPOTREP to higher headquarters. * 4. Platoon leader selects an appropriate course of action based on the commander's intent, METT-TC, his analysis of the situation, and input from elements in contact. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>a. Directs the platoon to execute the original course of action (as previously addressed in the OPORD) if it is consistent with the commander's intent/concept and is within the platoon's capability.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>b. Based on the situation, issues FRAGO to refine the plan, ensuring it supports the commander's intent.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>c. Directs the platoon to execute tactical movement (employing bounding overwatch and support by fire within the platoon) and reconnaissance by fire to further develop the situation.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>d. Directs the platoon to establish a hasty defense/support by fire (SBF) position and takes further guidance from commander.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>e. Chooses an alternative course of action (COA) based on evaluation and development of the situation.</p> <p>* 5. Platoon leader recommends alternative COA (if situation dictates a change to the original plan).</p> <p>a. Sends recommendation to the commander.</p> <p>b. Receives orders to execute the COA selected by the commander.</p> <p>c. Uses cross-talk with other platoons as necessary to obtain support (platoon leader/PSG).</p> <p>* 6. Platoon leader directs the platoon to execute the course of action based on the situation or commander's order.</p> <p>a. Directs the platoon to destroy an inferior force.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>b. Directs platoon to conduct overwatch/support by fire.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>c. Directs platoon to conduct an attack by fire.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>d. Directs platoon to assault an enemy position.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>e. Directs platoon to break contact and conduct bypass operations.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>f. Directs platoon to conduct reconnaissance by fire.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>g. Directs platoon to conduct defense of a battle position.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>h. Directs platoon to breach an obstacle.</p> <p>* 7. Platoon leader directs operation to completion based on the situation and OPORD, FRAGO, and commander's intent.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continues to execute the selected or refined COA until platoon accomplishes the original mission, receives a FRAGO from the commander, or is ordered to execute consolidation and reorganization on the objective. b. Alters COA during execution as the situation dictates. <p>* 8. Platoon leader/PSG keeps the commander informed throughout the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sends updated SITREPs and/or SPOTREPs as necessary. b. Reports completion of the operation. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1003

Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Infantry/Mech Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is in an ORP and must reconnoiter an area. The platoon is operating separately and provides its own security. The enemy is establishing hasty defensive positions. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire available. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon collects all available information on PIR and other intelligence requirements specified in the order for the area. The platoon completes the reconnaissance and reports all information by the time specified in the order. The platoon is not compromised. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The platoon leader plans and task organizes the platoon for the area reconnaissance.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Plans for the mission and conduct troop leading procedures.b. Coordinates with the company commander and battalion staff as necessary.c. Coordinates, if required, with the unit through which the platoon will conduct its forward passage of lines.d. Coordinates with the units patrolling in the adjacent areas.2. Conduct command and control of operations digitally:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Maintain digital situational awareness.b. Submit digital reports and overlays.c. Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally.* 3. The platoon leader organizes the platoon in one of two ways.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Organizes the platoon into separate reconnaissance and security elements.b. Organizes the platoon into combined reconnaissance and security element.* 4. The platoon leader takes subordinate leaders and key personnel on a leader's reconnaissance to confirm the objective and the plan.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Issues a contingency plan before departure.b. Identifies the objective and emplaces surveillance.c. Maintains communications with the platoon throughout the reconnaissance.d. Designates at least one surveillance team to keep the objective under surveillance.* 5. The platoon sergeant maintains security.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Establishes security at the ORP.b. Positions other security teams as required on likely enemy avenues of approach into the objective area.* 6. The platoon leader with the reconnaissance party returns to the ORP.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Confirms the plan or issues a FRAGO to change it.b. Allows subordinate leaders time to brief their personnel. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>7. The platoon conducts the reconnaissance by long-range observation and surveillance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is far enough from the objective to be outside of enemy small-arms weapons range and local security measures. b. Establishes a series of OPs, occupied by one or more reconnaissance teams, if the information cannot be gathered from one OP. c. Gathers all PIR by using the memory aid SALUTE. <p>8. The platoon conducts the reconnaissance by short-range observation and surveillance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves to a point near the objective within the range of enemy small-arms weapons fire and local security measures. b. Passes through any outposts, defensive wire, or minefields to get close enough to gain information. c. Gathers all PIR by using the memory aid SALUTE. <p>9. The platoon returns undetected to the ORP by the specified time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Disseminates information to all platoon members through the squad leaders at the ORP, or moves to another position at least one terrain feature away to disseminate information. b. Reports information of immediate effect and departs for the debriefing area. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1004

Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is required to reconnoiter a zone. The platoon is operating separately and provides its own security. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire and CAS capabilities. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. ROE have been published. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon determines all PIR and other intelligence requirements specified in the order for its assigned zone. The platoon reconnoiters without detection by the enemy. The platoon completes the reconnaissance and reports all information by the time specified in the order. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader plans and task organizes the platoon for the zone reconnaissance.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Plans the mission IAW T&EO 71-2-0065.07-3000, Conduct Troop Leading Procedures Infantry Platoon.b. Organizes the platoon into reconnaissance teams and security teams for the ORP.c. Coordinates with the company commander and battalion staff as necessary.d. Coordinates with the unit through which the platoon will conduct its forward passage of lines.e. Coordinates with the units patrolling in the adjacent areas.* 2. The platoon leader selects a series of ORPs or rally points throughout the zone from which to operate.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Estimates time requirements for movement to and from ORPs and rally points.b. Selects primary and alternate routes to the ORPs.c. Develops a contingency plan for actions on contact.* 3. The reconnaissance team leaders organize the reconnaissance team.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Designate the security and reconnaissance element.b. Assign responsibilities (point, pace (if dismounted), recorder, and rear security).c. Designate easily recognizable rally points.d. Ensure local security is established at all halts.4. The platoon reconnoiters the zone.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Moves tactically to the ORPs.b. Occupies the ORP.c. Follows the method selected by the platoon leader.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Fan method.(2) Converging-routes method.(3) Successive-sectors method.5. The reconnaissance teams perform reconnaissance.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Use the designated method along routes. (See T&EO 07-3-1134, Conduct Tactical Movement. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Gather all information based on PIR IAW the OPORD. c. Return to the ORP, or link up at the rendezvous point on time. * 6. The platoon leader controls the reconnaissance elements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves with the reconnaissance element that sets up the linkup point. b. Changes the reconnaissance method as the situation requires. c. Designates times for the reconnaissance elements to return to the ORP, or link up at the rendezvous point. d. Collects the information and disseminates it to all platoon members through the squad leaders. e. Accounts for personnel. 7. The platoon continues the reconnaissance using the selected method. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continues until all selected areas are reconnoitered. b. Returns undetected to friendly positions. c. Provides timely and accurate PIR as required in the OPORD. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1005

Conduct Route Reconnaissance

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is ordered to conduct a route reconnaissance. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger force. The platoon provides its own security. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire and CAS available. ROE have been published. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon collects all available information on PIR and other intelligence requirements specified in the order for the route. The platoon completes the reconnaissance and reports all information by the time specified in the order. The platoon is not compromised. The US forces comply with the ROE. Collateral damage is limited.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The platoon prepares for the mission.2. The platoon conducts the reconnaissance.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Uses the preferred reconnaissance method based on METT-T.b. Ensures intersecting routes are reconnoitered beyond direct-fire range.c. Uses a different return route.3. Collects and reports information about the route and the adjacent terrain.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Determines trafficability.b. Locates and evaluates all bridges.c. Locates and classifies fords or crossing sites near bridges.d. Evaluates the road surface of the route to include the width.e. Locates and classifies all underpasses, tunnels, and culverts.f. Identifies and evaluates restrictive curves and steep grades.g. Identifies and evaluates all other restrictive passages and obstacles.h. Locates and evaluates bypasses of all restrictive passages.i. Completes and confirms the map reconnaissance by visual inspection of the route and the adjacent terrain.j. Reconnoiters the terrain that dominates the route.k. Reconnoiters all built-up areas along the route.l. Reconnoiters all lateral and axial routes.m. Identifies all enemy forces that can influence the route.n. Determines the enemy location, strength, composition, and activity.o. Locates the enemy supporting units and weapons.p. Identifies the possible avenues of approach.q. Reports the situation to higher headquarters.4. The platoon prepares a route classification overlay.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Provides the beginning and the end coordinates of the route.b. Includes the trace of the route.c. Shows all restrictions to the traffic flow, to include bypass capability and classification for all restrictive passages.d. Shows all sharp curves and series of curves.e. Includes all level and uneven crossings.f. Includes the length and width of constrictions. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| g. Provides the percentage of slope on steep upgrades. h. Shows the overall capability of the route. 5. The platoon reports terrain information to the company. a. Submits the route classification in an overlay format IAW FM 5-34. b. Submits obstacle, bypass, and ford reports. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1006

Conduct a Screen (Infantry/Mech Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon has been ordered to conduct a screen for a larger force. The platoon may have attachments and must provide its own security. The unit may be moving or stationary. The enemy is attempting to gain intelligence about the friendly unit and impede its operation. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. ROE have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon maintains surveillance and provides early warning to the main body and detects all enemy activity in its sector. The screening platoon impedes and harasses the enemy with indirect fire and requests for CAS (if available and applicable). The platoon destroys enemy reconnaissance within its capabilities. The platoon provides the company headquarters the SALUTE report within 30 seconds of detecting the enemy. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The platoon screens forward of a moving force.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Deploys OPs on a proposed screen line or executes guard (advance, flank, or rear) mission for the main body using the appropriate movement techniques and using the terrain for protection. (See T&EO 07-3-1134.07-3000, Conduct Tactical Movement Infantry Platoon.)b. Positions the squads to provide early warning and maintains cover and concealment.c. Reports enemy activity while at the screen line and before engaging enemy elements.d. Engages the enemy when contact is made with indirect or direct fires as stated in the OPORD.e. Guides the reaction force, if one is designated, to the location of the enemy activity.2. The platoon screens the flank or rear of a moving force.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Moves to the initial screen line using the appropriate movement techniques. (See T&EO 07-3-1134.07-3000, Conduct Tactical Movement Infantry Platoon.)b. Provides early warning of enemy activity to the main body.c. Moves to keep pace with the main body by moving or displacing OPs or moving tactically at a designated interval from the main body.d. Conducts patrols between OPs and in areas that cannot be observed, as the situation permits.e. Requests and adjusts supporting fire to delay and force deployment of enemy forces.f. Maintains the continuity of the screen and prevents the enemy reconnaissance elements from reaching the main body undetected.g. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements within its capabilities.h. Withdraws to the subsequent screen line on order.3. The platoon screens a stationary force. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes two to four OPs for surveillance of the area forward of the initial screen line. (See T&EO 07-3-4008, Conduct Surveillance from an Observation Post Rifle Platoon.) b. Establishes successive screen lines as enemy pressure increases. c. Executes the remainder of this task IAW the performance measures 2a and 2b, 2d through 2h, above. Performance measure 2c is not evaluated. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1100

Conduct Attack (Infantry/Mech Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is operating separately and has been ordered to attack to seize an objective. The enemy has been in position for 24 hours and has prepared positions with mines and wire. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fire capabilities. The platoon is given sufficient time to plan. ROE have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon main body is not surprised or fixed by the enemy. The platoon accomplishes its assigned tasks according to the commander's intent. The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of the enemy. The platoon accomplishes the mission NLT the time specified in the OPORD. The platoon maintains a sufficient fighting force capable of defeating an enemy counterattack and continuing further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader receives, plans, and issues the OPORD IAW T&EO71-2-0065.07-3000 Conduct Troop Leading Procedures Infantry Platoon* 2. The platoon leader organizes the platoon to conduct the attack.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Designates a base-of-fire element (IAW T&EO 07-3-2107.07-3000, Conduct Overwatch / Support by Fire Rifle Platoonb. Designates an assault element based on the enemy situation, consisting of one, two, or all squads (dependent on the platoon acting alone or as a part of a company attack).c. Designates a breach force if necessary.d. Designates movement and fire control measures.3. The platoon prepares for the attack.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Conducts precombat checks.b. Conducts rehearsals.4. The platoon moves from the assembly area to the line of departure (LD).<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Moves without stopping in the attack position, if possible.b. Fixes bayonets, if directed.c. Deploys in attack formation.d. Crosses at the right place and on time.5. The platoon moves from the LD to the assault or support position.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Moves using the appropriate techniques (IAW T&EO 07-3-1134.07-3000, Conduct Tactical Movement Infantry Platoon).b. Uses a covered and concealed route.c. Moves the assault and base-of-fire elements to their respective positions without being compromised.6. The platoon moves through the assault position and assaults.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Deploys in the assault formation.b. Breaches IAW T&EO 07-3-1403.07-3000, Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle Rifle Platoon.c. Assaults IAW T&EO 71-2-0220.07-3403, Assault an Enemy Position Rifle Platoon | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| 7. The platoon performs consolidation and reorganization IAW T&EO 7-3-4607, Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization Rifle Platoon Mounted 8. The platoon reports to the company commander when the objective has been secured. 9. The platoon repels the enemy counterattack. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1101

Conduct Movement to Contact (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is operating separately or as a part of a larger unit and is ordered to conduct a movement to contact. Contact with the enemy was broken. The enemy has withdrawn, is being reinforced, and is preparing to counterattack. (This can be an insurgency or counter-insurgency environment.) The enemy has indirect fire capabilities. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon moves NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon makes contact with only one element and the main body is not surprised by the enemy. Once the platoon makes contact, it maintains contact to destroy squad and smaller sized elements and fix units larger than a squad. The platoon maintains a sufficient fighting force capable of conducting further combat operations. The unit complies with the ROE/ROI, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader plans the movement to contact.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Platoon leader conducts troop leading procedures.b. (If not directed by the company) Determines which technique to use for conducting the movement to contact.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Search-and-attack technique.(2) Approach march technique.c. Considers METT-TC when determining the method.d. Addresses PIR requirements.* 2. The platoon leader supervises preparations for the mission.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Coordinates the plan with adjacent units.b. Platoon maintains security during preparations.c. Reconnoiters and posts guides along the route to the LD, if authorized in the OPORD.3. The platoon crosses the LD on time and begins the movement to contact.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Initiates movement on the platoon leader's order.b. Moves in the formation designated in the order.* 4. The platoon leader directs the platoon to use the search-and-attack technique.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Uses multiple, coordinated, small-unit (squad/team) to find, fix, or finish the enemy.b. Determines the number and size of the units operating areas.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Assigns small areas of operation that keep the squads more concentrated and helps maintain control. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Divides the platoon area into zones and focuses on one zone at a time while conducting economy-of-force missions in other zones. c. Locates the enemy without being detected. d. Once engaged, fixes the enemy in position and maneuvers against the enemy. e. Maintains security throughout actions. * 5. The platoon leader directs the platoon to use the approach-march technique. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selects the movement technique and formation based on the likelihood of enemy contact. b. Maintains contact, once contact is made, until ordered to do otherwise. 6. The platoon reacts to contact. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reacts to contact and takes the appropriate actions. b. Follows the directions of higher headquarters. * 7. The platoon leader reorganizes the platoon as necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts consolidation and reorganization. b. Reports the situation to the company. c. Continues the mission. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1102

Conduct Raid (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is tasked to conduct a raid. The platoon has been reinforced with the necessary equipment to perform the specific purpose of the raid and sustain itself during the mission. The objective is defended by a reinforced enemy squad. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire support. ROE have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon initiates the raid NLT the time specified in the order, surprises the enemy, assaults the objective, and accomplishes its assigned task within the commander's intent. The platoon does not become decisively engaged. Obtains all PIR from the raid objective. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader plans for the mission IAW T&EO 71-2-0065.07-3000, Conduct Troop Leading Procedures Infantry Platoon<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Maintains unit integrity.b. Designates a security element, support element (including company mortars and antiarmor weapons section if attached), and assault element(s).c. Conducts coordination through the company headquarters, adjacent, or supporting units.2. The platoon prepares for the mission. (See T&EO 71-2-0065.07-3000, Conduct Troop Leading Procedures Infantry Platoon.)<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Identifies special teams.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Demolition.(2) Prisoner of war.(3) Search.(4) Other (as required).b. Conducts rehearsals as directed by the platoon leader.3. The platoon moves to the objective rally point ORP (see T&EO 07-3-1134.07-3000, Conduct Tactical Movement Infantry Platoon)<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Secures the ORP.b. Prepares for the leader's reconnaissance.* 4. The platoon leader, squad leaders, and selected personnel conduct a leader's reconnaissance.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. (Platoon leader) Leaves a contingency plan with the platoon sergeant.b. Verifies routes to security, support, and assault positions.c. Observes the target, and verify and update intelligence information.d. Conducts the reconnaissance without compromising the raid.e. Leaves a surveillance team to observe the objective.* 5. The platoon leader decides to conduct or to abort the raid based on information gained during the reconnaissance of the target and battalion guidance.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Recommends to abort if the number of enemy personnel significantly alters the engagement ratio. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Recommends to abort if enemy activity in the target area is significantly increased, movement of outside elements in the area is detected, or increased air coverage is present. c. Returns to the ORP, informs the company, and waits for further directions, if he decides to abort the raid. 6. The reconnaissance element returns to the ORP, and the commander adjusts the raid plan to complement the current intelligence. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigns positions for all elements. b. Designates the withdrawal routes back to the ORP. c. Designates control measures on the objective--element objectives, lanes, limits of advance, and assault line. d. Informs the company the raid will be conducted. 7. Elements and teams prepare to move in position. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepare ammunition, pyrotechnics, and Claymores. b. Disseminate all updated intelligence information on the objective. c. Check weapons and special equipment. 8. Security elements occupy designated positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Move in position undetected by the enemy. b. Provide early warning of enemy approach. c. Seal off the objective from outside support or reinforcement, to include air threat. * 9. The support element leader moves the support element to positions designated by the commander. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves in position undetected. b. Uses covered and concealed route to support positions. c. Ensures well-aimed fire may be placed on the objective from the positions. *10. The platoon leader moves with the assault element to the assault position. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures the assault position is close enough to the objective for immediate assault, if detected before the planned assault. b. Moves into position undetected by the enemy. c. Establishes local security. d. Establishes fire control measures. *11. Leaders inform the platoon leader when their elements are ready to conduct the raid. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Report when in position and any changes to the original locations. b. Report any changes to the enemy situation. *12. The platoon leader directs the support element to fire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiates planned indirect, suppressive, or obscuration fires on known and suspected enemy position(s) that can support the objective. b. Ensures squads support IAW T&EO 71-2-3061.07-3408, Conduct Overwatch/Support by Fire. 13. The assault element advances toward the objective. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Holds fire until it is ready to penetrate the objective, or is engaged by direct enemy fire. b. Reports to platoon leader when in position and ready to assault. *14. The platoon leader orders the assault. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs the security element to prevent enemy entry or escape from the objective area security element. b. Signals the support element to shift fires. 15. The support element shifts or lifts direct fires as directed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Shifts or lifts indirect fires under the control of the FSO. b. Shifts fires to the flanks of targets or areas (roads, bridges, or outlying support bases) designated in the raid plan. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>16. The assault element attacks and secures the objective IAW T&EO 07-3-1127.07-3000, Conduct Airborne Assault Infantry Platoon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Accomplishes all assigned tasks (demolition teams set charges; search teams search the objective and secure any enemy survivors as prisoners). b. Reports to the platoon leader when assigned tasks are completed. <p>17. On order or signal from the platoon leader, the assault element withdraws from the objective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Activates the detonation devices. b. (Designated special teams or personnel closest to the withdrawal exit points) Provides security until all teams or personnel have withdrawn from the objective. c. Ensures leaders account for all personnel and report casualty status to the platoon leader. <p>18. The FO shifts indirect fires on the target.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requests the integration of smoke rounds to mask the withdrawal. b. Shifts indirect fires to delay enemy reinforcements. <p>19. The squads withdraw from the objective in the sequence designated in the FRAGO to a covered and concealed position away from the objective area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Account for personnel and equipment. b. Disseminate PIR and IR. c. Redistribute ammunition and equipment. d. Arrange for further evacuation of wounded. <p>20. The platoon forwards raid reports and continues the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports raid assessment to the company headquarters. b. Informs the company commander of PIR or IR obtained during the raid. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1110

Clear a Building

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is operating as a part of the company in a MOUT environment. The platoon identifies enemy of unknown size in a building and is required to clear the building. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. ROE have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of all enemy in the building. The platoon maintains a sufficient force capable of repelling an enemy counterattack and conducting further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader organizes the platoon in a support element and an assault element.2. The platoon leader organizes the assault element in room clearing teams, consisting of three personnel minimum or four personnel (a fire team maximum). The exact number of clearing teams is based on the factors of METT-T. The assault element carries as much ammunition as possible, especially extra grenades.3. The support element provides fire support for the assault force (M60s/M249s are positioned with the support element).4. The assault element lessens the effects of enemy defensive fires during movement to the objective. (See T&EO 07-3-1134.07-3000, Conduct Tactical Movement Infantry Platoon.)<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Uses covered and concealed routes (to include rooftops); exploits limited visibility conditions whenever possible.b. Conducts movement only after enemy defensive fires are suppressed or obscured.c. Moves along routes that do not mask friendly suppressive fires.d. Crosses open areas rapidly under the concealment of smoke and the suppression of enemy targets provided by the support force.* 5. The platoon sergeant controls the actions of the support element.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Assigns each soldier and key weapon a target or area to cover.b. Suppresses and/or impairs enemy gunners in the objective building and adjacent buildings.c. Isolates the objective building with direct and indirect fires to prevent enemy withdrawal, reinforcement, or counterattack.d. Uses direct fire weapons to destroy enemy positions.e. Increases the support element's rate of fire just before the assault element enters the building.f. Shifts supporting fires to the upper windows, and then shifts to adjacent buildings as the assault element enters the building from ground level, or shifts to lower windows when entering through an upper story.g. Provides replacements and ammunition to the assault force, as required. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>6. The assault element, under the platoon leader's control, assaults the objective building.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enters the building at the highest level possible. b. Enters the first floor only when forced to do so. <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Approaches from enemy flank or rear.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Blows an entrance through a wall.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(3) Throws grenades (cooked off, at the most two seconds) through doors or windows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Secures the entry point and covering staircases and other routes leading to upper and lower stories once inside the building. d. First clear the rooms that overlook the approaches to the building. <p>7. The assault element clears each room in the objective building IAW ARTEP 7-8-DRILL, Battle Drill 6, Enter and Clear a Building (Platoon); and Battle Drill 6A, Enter a Building and Clear a Room (Squad).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Marks the cleared rooms (IAW the platoon SOP). b. Consolidates and continues the attack. c. Positions teams, as directed by the assault element leader, to secure entry points, hallways, stairs, and cleared rooms from enemy infiltration. <p>8. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes in the cleared building to repel enemy counterattack. (See T&EO 7-3-4607, Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization Rifle Platoon Mounted.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positions personnel to cover enemy routes of counterattack and infiltration in the building. b. Redistributes ammunition and requests resupply, as required. c. Treats and evacuates casualties. d. Marks the building to show that it has been cleared. Also, marks entry points (IAW the platoon SOP). e. Establishes hasty defensive positions, if required. (See T&EO 07-3-1118.07-3000, Defend MOUT/Building Rifle/Recon Platoon.) f. Continues its mission. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1112

React to Ambush (Infantry Platoon/Squad)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is in a prepared kill zone. The enemy initiates the ambush with a casualty-producing device and a high volume of fire. The unit has guidance provided by the Rules of Engagement (ROE) and from Mission Instructions such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and Rules of Interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and can reduce the combat power available to commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon reacts immediately to the ambush based on the type (near, far). The platoon disengages the element in the kill zone or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, Mission Instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>NOTE: Leaders ensure that rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) are disseminated to subordinate personnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The personnel in the kill zone react to a near ambush (within hand-grenade range).<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Immediately return fire, assume covered positions, and throw fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades.b. Immediately after the grenades detonate, individually assault through the ambush using individual fire and movement.2. The personnel not in the kill zone react to a near ambush.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Identify enemy positions.b. Initiate immediate suppressive fires against the enemy.c. Take up covered positions.d. Shift fires as the personnel in the kill zone assault through the ambush.3. The personnel receiving fire in a far ambush (beyond hand-grenade range) immediately return fire and take up covered positions.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Suppress or destroy enemy crew-served weapons first.b. Obscure the enemy position with smoke (M203).c. Sustain suppressive fires and shift them as the assaulting squads fight through the enemy position.4. The personnel not receiving fire react to far ambush.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Move by a covered and concealed route to a vulnerable flank of the enemy position.b. Assault using fire and movement techniques.5. The platoon FO calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the platoon leader.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Uses indirect fires to isolate the enemy position.b. Adjusts fires on any retreating enemy. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| * 6. The platoon leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports the situation to higher headquarters. b. Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary. c. Continues the mission. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1113

Knock Out A Bunker

Status: Active

Condition: While moving as a part of a larger force, the platoon identifies the enemy in bunkers. The platoon is ordered to secure and clear a portion of the bunker complex. The platoon and enemy elements have indirect fire available. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon destroys the designated bunker by killing, capturing, or forcing the withdrawal of the enemy in the bunker. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. If engaged, the platoon takes action on contact.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Establishes a base of fire with the squad in contact.b. The platoon leader and selected personnel move forward to link up with the squad leader of the lead squad in contact.<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) Use a covered and concealed route.(2) Direct the platoon sergeant/weapons squad leader to move forward with the second machine gun team and assume control of the base-of-fire element.(3) Direct, if required, the FO to call for and adjust indirect fires on the enemy position.* 2. If not engaged, the platoon leader makes an estimate of the situation to determine where he can maneuver.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Identifies enemy bunkers, other supporting positions, and any obstacles.b. Determines the size of the enemy force (the number of enemy automatic weapons, the presence of any vehicles, and the employment of indirect fires are indicators of enemy strength).c. Identifies a vulnerable flank of at least one bunker.d. Identifies a covered and concealed route to the flank of that bunker.* 3. The platoon leader determines which bunker is to be assaulted first.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Directs one squad not in contact to knock out the bunker using LAWs or AT4s.b. Instructs the platoon sergeant to reposition the base-of-fire element to isolate the bunker and continue suppressive fires.c. Accompanies the assault squad.4. The base-of-fire element under the platoon sergeant's control begins to suppress the enemy.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Destroys or suppresses enemy crew-served weapons first.b. Obscures the enemy position with smoke (M203). | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Sustains suppressive fires. d. Shifts indirect fire as the platoon continues. * 5. The assault squad leader leads the assault squad against the bunker. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves along the covered and concealed route. b. Approaches the bunker from its blind side and does not mask the fires of the base-of-fire element. c. Constantly watches for other bunkers or enemy positions in support of it. d. Conducts the assault upon reaching the last covered and concealed position. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Directs the fire team leader and the automatic rifleman to remain in place and add their fires to suppress the bunker (includes the use of AT4s/LAWs). (2) The squad leader positions himself where he can best control his teams. On the squad leader's signal, the base-of-fire element lifts fire or shifts fires to the opposite side of the bunker from the assaulting fire team's approach. (3) The grenadier and the rifleman continue forward to the blind side of the bunker. One soldier takes up a covered position near the exit, while the other soldier cooks off (two seconds) a grenade and throws it through an aperture. (4) After the grenade detonates, the soldier covering the exit enters the bunker, firing short bursts, to destroy the enemy. (The soldier who throws the grenade should not be the first one to clear the bunker.) (5) The squad leader inspects the bunker to ensure it is destroyed and marked. He reports, reorganizes as needed, and continues the mission. 6. The platoon follows the success of the attack against the bunker. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continues the attack of other bunkers as directed by the platoon leader (repeat steps 5 through 6). b. Shifts indirect fires as the platoon continues. * 7. The platoon leader directs the platoon sergeant to reposition the base-of-fire element. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continues to isolate and suppress the remaining bunkers. b. Maintains suppressive fires. * 8. The platoon leader reorganizes the platoon to maintain the momentum of the attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Redesignates one of the base-of-fire squads to move up and knock out the next bunker. b. Directs the assaulting squad to continue and knock out the next bunker. <p>NOTE: The platoon leader must consider the condition of the assaulting squad (ammunition and exhaustion) and rotate squads as necessary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Ensures the assaulting squad follows the same procedures listed above when knocking out the next bunker. * 9. The platoon leader directs the actions of the platoon once it has cleared its assigned portion of the bunker complex. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports to the company commander. b. Consolidates and Reorganizes as necessary. c. Passes another platoon from the company through to continue the attack as required. d. Prepares to continue the mission. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1114

Clear a Trench Line

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is attacking as part of a larger force and identifies enemy in a trench line. The platoon leader determines he has sufficient combat power to maneuver and assault the trench line. ROE was published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of the enemy in its assigned section of the trench. The platoon main body is not surprised by an enemy counterattack. The platoon maintains a sufficient force capable of defeating an enemy counterattack and conducting further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader organizes the platoon to clear the trench line.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Designates an assault element and a support element.b. Designates the assault squad to enter the trench and secure a foothold.c. Designates the entry point of the trench line and the direction of movement once the platoon begins clearing.d. Informs the platoon sergeant to position the support element (personnel and machine guns) to suppress the trench and isolate the entry point.e. Calls for artillery and smoke.* 2. The assault element leader organizes the assault element into a series of two-man or three-man clearing teams (firer, grenade thrower, security).<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Directs one fire team to assault and one fire team to support by fire initially, then follows and supports the assaulting fire team.b. Designates the entry point of the trench line.* 3. The assault squad leader orders the assault squad to conduct the assault.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Moves the assault team to the last covered and concealed position short of the entry point.b. Marks the entry point.c. Directs the base-of-fire element to shift fires away from the entry point and continues to suppress adjacent enemy positions or isolate the trench as required.d. Positions himself where he can best control his teams.e. Signals the assault team to enter the trench.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) The assault team leader and the automatic rifleman remain in a position short of the trench to add suppressive fires for the initial entry.(2) The two remaining personnel of the assault fire team (rifleman and grenadier) continue toward the entry point. They move in rushes or by crawling.(3) Upon reaching the edge of the trench, position themselves parallel to the trench (boot to boot), and, on the squad leader's signal, cook-off grenades (two seconds at the most) and throw the grenades into the trench. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>(4) After ensuring that both grenades detonate, the personnel roll into the trench, landing on their feet, and back to back. They fire their weapons down the trench in opposite directions.</p> <p>(5) Immediately, both personnel move in opposite directions down the trench, continuing to fire three-round bursts. Each soldier continues until he reaches the first corner or intersection. Then, each soldier halts and takes up a position to block any enemy movement toward the entry point.</p> <p>(6) The squad leader directs the remaining assault team to one of the secured corners or intersections to relieve the rifleman or grenadier who then rejoins his buddy at the opposite end of the foothold.</p> <p>(7) The squad leader remains at the entry point and reports to the platoon leader that he has entered the trench and secured a foothold.</p> <p>* 4. The platoon leader follows the success of the seizure of the foothold with the remainder of the platoon.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Reorganizes the squads, as necessary. Redistributes the ammunition. <p>* 5. The platoon leader directs one of the base-of-fire element squads to move in the trench and begin clearing it in the direction of movement from the foothold.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Repositions the base-of-fire element as necessary to continue suppressive fires. Moves into the trench with the assaulting squad. <p>* 6. The squad leader of the assaulting squad controls the actions of his squad as it passes the squad securing the foothold.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Designates a lead fire team and a trail fire team. Moves with the lead fire team to the forward most secure corner or intersection and tells the securing team that his squad is ready to pass through and continue clearing. Ensures the trail fire team follows and maintains visual contact with the last soldier of the lead team. <p>NOTE: Throughout this technique, the team leader positions himself at the rear of the fire team to have direct control (physically, if necessary) of his personnel. Other personnel in the fire team rotate the lead. Personnel rotate the lead to change magazines and prepare grenades. Rotating the lead provides constant suppressive fires down the trench and maintains the momentum of the attack as the squad clears the trench.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Passes the lead team through the element securing the foothold. <p>7. The lead fire team starts clearing in the direction of movement.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Moves to the next corner, the second man cooks-off (two seconds at the most), and throws a grenade around the corner. After the grenade explodes, moves around the corner as a team following the lead soldier to the next corner or intersection. <p>* 8. The squad leader follows behind the lead fire team.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Ensures the trailing fire team moves up and is ready to pass the lead at his direction. Rotates the fire teams as necessary to keep the soldiers alert and maintain the momentum of the attack. Requests indirect fires, if necessary, through the platoon leader. Ensures the trailing fire team secures intersections and marks the route within the trench as the squad moves forward. Reports the progress of the clearing to the platoon leader. <p>* 9. The platoon leader controls and supports the progress of the clearing action.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Rotates squads to keep personnel alert and maintain the momentum of the assault. b. Calls the platoon sergeant to forward ammunition resupply and to organize teams to move it into the trench. c. Ensures the platoon sergeant moves friendly forces in the trench only through the designated entry point. d. Reports to the company commander that the trench line is secured, or that his platoon is no longer able to continue clearing. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1115

Conduct Defense (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is ordered to occupy, prepare, and defend a battle position or sector as a separate unit or as part of a larger force. Planning, precombat checks, and movement to the rear of the defensive position are completed. The enemy can attack in company-size strength, either mounted or dismounted. Both friendly and enemy elements are supported by indirect fire and CAS. ROE have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon completes all designated preparations NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon main body is not surprised by the enemy. The platoon accomplishes its assigned task IAW the OPORD. The platoon continues follow-on operations.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The platoon leader conducts a leader's reconnaissance of the battle position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Issues the platoon sergeant a contingency plan before the reconnaissance party departs.b. Approaches the position from the rear and conducts the reconnaissance with the FO, RATELO, squad leaders, and security element.c. Ensures the position is free of enemy, mines, and obstacles.d. Confirms and if required, modifies the platoon tentative positions and fire plan.e. Ensures the security elements establish local security during the reconnaissance and battle position occupation.f. Assigns squad sectors and observation posts (OP) locations. (OPs have wire communications, if available.)g. Designates the location for the platoon early warning system, the chemical-alarm system (if assigned), and the platoon CP.h. Selects initial M249 and crew-served weapon positions to cover likely avenues of approach. <p>NOTE: It is important to reconnoiter the position from the enemy perspective to know how the position should be defended.</p> <p>2. The platoon leader returns to the platoon position or calls the platoon forward.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Moves the platoon on covered and concealed routes.b. Enforces camouflage, noise, light, and litter discipline.c. Maintains security during movement.d. Directs the squads to occupy designated positions at the same time, if possible. <p>* 3. The platoon occupies the position; the platoon leader:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Establishes security (to include OPs, hasty perimeter, or security patrols).b. Determines and confirms the engagement area (where he plans to kill the enemy).c. Adjusts the positions of the squads, machine guns, and any attachments, as required.d. Assigns sectors of fire, engagement priorities, and other fire control measures. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Assigns alternate and supplementary positions and routes to them. f. Develops an obstacle and direct fire plan. g. Develops a fire support plan (with the platoon FO) to include final protective fires (FPF) and fires used to support repositioning the platoon to alternate or supplementary positions. h. Establishes communications from the platoon CP to the squad positions. i. Confirms all positions and squad sector sketches before the soldiers begin digging. j. Ensures the platoon is tied in with the unit on its right and left. k. Develops a reconnaissance and surveillance plan IAW the company plan. * 4. The squad leaders prepare sector sketches and submit a copy to the platoon leader. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Indicate the main terrain features in the squad's sector of fire and the ranges to them. b. Indicate each primary fighting position. c. Indicate the primary and secondary sectors of fire for each position. d. Indicate the type of weapon in each position and fire control measures (FPF, PDF, or FPL). e. Indicate OPs and squad leader positions. f. Indicate dead space. g. Indicate obstacles. h. Indicate direction of north. * 5. The platoon leader prepares a platoon sector sketch and sends a copy to the company commander. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Indicates the platoon sector or engagement area. b. Indicates squad positions (primary, alternate, and supplementary) and sectors of fire. c. Indicates vehicle, Dragon/Javelin, and M60/M249 positions with primary sectors of fire, FPL or PDF for primary vehicle weapon systems, M60s/M249s, and TRPs. d. Indicates OPs and patrol routes (if any). e. Indicates the greatest engagement lines for the primary weapons systems. f. Indicates mines and obstacles. g. Indicates indirect fire targets and FPFs (if allocated). h. Indicates direction of true north. i. Indicates platoon designation. j. Indicates date-time group the sketch was prepared. k. Indicates platoon CP. 6. The platoon members begin preparation of fighting positions IAW the platoon SOP (usually, two or more of these tasks are performed at the same time). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Emplace Claymore mines. b. Physically reconnoiter in front of the position to become familiar with the terrain and locate dead space. c. Make physical contact with adjacent positions, and select covered and/or concealed routes to those positions. d. Clear fields of fire. e. Prepare range cards and aiming stakes. f. Dig fighting positions. g. Construct overhead cover for fighting positions. h. Camouflage positions. i. Stockpile ammunition, food, and water. 7. The RATELO installs landline (hot loop). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lays wire (hot loop) to each squad. b. Establishes communications with the company. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Conducts a communications check to ensure the landline is operational. 8. The platoon emplaces obstacles IAW the platoon or company obstacle plan. (See T&EO 07-3-1404.07-3000, Construct an Obstacle Infantry Platoon). Each obstacle should be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Covered by direct or indirect fire and under friendly observation. b. Concealed from enemy observation as much as possible. c. Erected in an irregular pattern. d. Employed in depth. e. Tied in with existing obstacles. * 9. The platoon leader (with the FO) updates the fire plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Adds enemy avenues of approach. b. Adds known or likely enemy positions. c. Adds final protective fires (if allocated). 10. The platoon continues to improve defensive positions as time permits, to include rehearsals of movement to alternate and supplementary positions. 11. The platoon initiates contact or takes actions against the enemy. The platoon leader: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alerts the squad leaders, platoon sergeant, and his forward observers. b. Reports the situation to the company commander. c. Calls in OPs. (The platoon leader may decide to leave the OP in place if the personnel manning provide effective flanking fires, their position affords them adequate protection, and their return will compromise the platoon position.) d. Calls for and adjusts indirect fire when the enemy is at the greatest range. e. Initiates direct fire engagement of the attacking enemy IAW the company or platoon fire plan. Antiarmor weapons conduct initial engagement simultaneously, if possible. *12. The platoon leader determines if the platoon can destroy the enemy from its assigned positions. If yes, the platoon-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continues to fight by increasing the intensity of fires as the enemy closes to within range of additional weapons. b. Continues to call for indirect fires as the enemy approaches. c. Disrupts and canalizes enemy formations to designated engagement areas. d. Destroys the enemy attempting to breach tactical obstacles. *13. The platoon leader directs actions as the enemy closes in on the platoon's protective wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiates the FPF. b. Directs the automatic weapons to fire along the interlocking PDF. c. Ensures the M203 grenade launchers engage enemy in dead space or against the enemy attempting to breach the protective wire. d. Directs the squads to occupy supplementary or alternate positions if the situation dictates. 14. The platoon continues to defend the battle position until the enemy is repelled or is ordered to disengage. 15. If the platoon leader determines the platoon cannot hold its position, he-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports the situation to the company commander. b. Requests permission to withdraw. c. If given permission, executes the withdrawal plan IAW T&EO 07-3-1122.07-3000, Disengage from an Enemy Force Infantry Platoon. d. Requests supporting high explosives (HE) and smoke to support unit disengagement. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 16. When the enemy withdraws or the platoon completes its disengagement, the platoon consolidates and reorganizes IAW T&EO 07-3-4607, Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization Rifle Platoon Mounted. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1117

Break Contact

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is moving or stationary. The enemy fires on the platoon. The platoon leader orders the platoon to break contact. ROE have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon moves to where the enemy cannot observe or place direct fire on it. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader gives the order to break contact.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Directs one squad in contact to support the disengagement of the remainder of the platoon.b. Orders the movement of one squad to a recognizable terrain feature or to the last rally point to establish a subsequent fire support area.2. The base-of-fire element continues to suppress the enemy.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Maintains effective direct fire against specified targets.b. Uses indirect fire to suppress the enemy and mask the movement of the movement element, as available.c. Obscures the enemy position with smoke (hand held or M203).3. The movement element begins its disengagement.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Uses fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades to mask its movement.b. Takes up the designated position and engages the enemy position.* 4. The platoon leader directs the base-of-fire element to move to its next location.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Uses the appropriate movement technique based on the volume and accuracy of the enemy fire.b. Takes up the designated position and engages the enemy position.5. The platoon continues to bound away from the enemy.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Continues to suppress the enemy as it breaks contact.b. Element continues bounding until it breaks contact, passes through a higher level support-by-fire position, or reaches the assigned position for its next mission.c. Changes the direction of movement once contact is broken to reduce the ability of the enemy to place effective indirect fires on the unit.d. Moves to the last designated rally point in the absence of a leader's instructions.* 6. The platoon leader moves the platoon to the final rally point.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Accounts for personnel and equipment.b. Reorganizes as required IAW T&EO 07-3-4607.07-0078, Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization Rifle Platoonc. Reports to the company commander. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1118

Defend Built-up Area/Building (Infantry Platoon/Squad)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is ordered to occupy a defensive position in a built-up area. The platoon is operating separately or as part of the company. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire available. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area.

Note: High-Intensity MOUT: The full, integrated firepower of the joint combined arms team is brought to bear on the enemy.

Precision MOUT: Either the enemy is thoroughly mixed with the noncombatants or political considerations require the ROE be significantly more restrictive than under high-intensity MOUT conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon completes all specified defensive preparations NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon main body is not surprised by the enemy. The platoon prevents the enemy from gaining a foothold or any penetrations of its position, or prevents enemy units of company-size or smaller from moving through the area, or destroys attacking enemy units of company-size or smaller, or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop leading procedures and develops a tentative plan.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Platoon leader conducts command and control of operations digitally.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Maintain digital situational awareness.(2) Submit digital reports and overlays.(3) Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally.b. Conducts reconnaissance of the position with the squad leaders, RTO, FO, and security element.c. Assigns the squad sectors and OP locations.d. Analyzes the defensive sector to recommend to the company commander the best use of obstacles and supporting fires.2. The platoon occupies the position and sets up security.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Emplaces at least one OP with communications in five minutes of occupation so the main body is warned before an enemy attack.b. Emplaces the platoon early warning system or devices before dark or other limited visibility.c. Sets up the chemical-alarm system for monitoring in five minutes of occupying the position.* 3. The leaders position crew-served weapons and special weapons.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Position antiarmor weapons to cover armored avenues of approach. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Position weapons inside buildings with adequate space and ventilation for backblast (on upper floors, if possible, for long-range top shots). c. Position MGs/M249s to cover dismounted avenues of approach. (Place them near ground level to increase grazing fires. If ground rubble obstructs grazing fires, MGs/M249s are placed in the upper stories of the building.) d. Ensures weapons are mutually supporting and tied in with adjacent units. <p>* 4. The platoon leader establishes leader positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Places the platoon CP in a covered and concealed location. b. Establishes an OP where the platoon leader can view and control the battle. c. Has squad leaders occupy fighting positions with their squads. <p>* 5. The squad/team leaders position remaining squad members.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assign each member a position with primary and secondary sectors of fire. b. Make sure positions permit interlocking fires. c. Improve positions as time permits. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Sandbags for overhead and all-round protection. (2) Wire mesh over windows (open at the bottom to allow grenades to be dropped out). (3) Loopholes/fire prevention measures. <p>* 6. The platoon leader makes coordination with adjacent units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent squads and platoons. b. Exchanges information on OP locations, unit signals, and passage points. <p>7. The RTO installs wire communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lays wire between the platoon CP and the squads. b. Employs switchboards or hot loops as appropriate. <p>NOTE: Immediately install wire communications with OPs when OPs are established.</p> <p>8. The platoon constructs barriers and obstacles to deny the enemy access to streets, underground passages, buildings, and to slow his movement (including rooftops and in all buildings).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Integrates barriers and/or obstacles with the platoon's key weapons. b. Covers all barriers and obstacles by fire and/or observation (both direct and indirect), mined, and booby-trapped. <p>* 9. The platoon leader and FO plan and coordinate indirect fires to support the platoon defense:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Cover likely avenues of approach. b. Cover obstacles. c. Cover counterattack plans. <p>*10. The leaders designate alternate and supplementary positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Give each soldier and key weapon an alternate and supplementary position. b. Designate and, when appropriate, mark routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary positions. <p>11. The platoon improves movement routes within the platoon position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Improves routes by digging trenches, using sewers and tunnels, creating mouse holes, and emplacing ropes for climbing and rappelling. b. Marks routes between positions. <p>*12. The platoon leader develops a counterattack plan for each likely enemy situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures the counterattack force is allocated demolitions, antiarmor assets, and extra grenades. b. Designates and, if appropriate, marks routes for counterattack. c. Ensures the counterattack plan is rehearsed during the day and at night. <p>*13. The platoon leader prepares and rehearses the withdrawal plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates and, if appropriate, marks the withdrawal routes. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Ensures leaders plan and disseminate primary and alternate withdrawal signals. c. Ensures the withdrawal plan is rehearsed during the day and at night. <p>14. The platoon defends against an assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses direct and indirect fire to separate the enemy fighting vehicles from the dismounted personnel that are providing security for the vehicles. b. Executes the company or platoon barrier plan to impede and canalize the vehicles and personnel into planned fires. c. Employs smoke to blind the vehicles. d. Engages the vehicles with organic and attached antiarmor weapons (simultaneously, if possible), command-detonated mines and demolitions, and field-expedient antiarmor weapons. e. Commits the reserve to defeat or block a penetration, if required. f. Moves elements, as directed by the platoon leader, between primary, alternate, and supplementary positions to complete the destruction or expulsion of the enemy force. g. Uses direct and indirect FPFs to suppress, block, and destroy dismounted, enemy troop formations, as ordered by the commander. <p>15. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes during lulls in the fighting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidates and reorganizes squads and other elements. b. Transmits status reports, requests for support and resupply, and enemy information to the company CP IAW the platoon SOP and current orders. c. Replaces damaged barriers and obstacles, repairs positions, restores communications, and posts OPs that were withdrawn during the engagement. d. Resumes security and patrolling activities. e. Continues to defend until a change of mission is received. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1119

Conduct Delay (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The company orders the platoon to delay the enemy for a specific time. The enemy can attack by air, indirect fire, and ground (mounted or dismounted). ROE have been published.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon does not start the delay earlier than the specified time, event, or on order. The platoon delays the enemy in the designated area for the time specified in the order. The platoon maintains contact with the enemy for the time specified in the order and does not become decisively engaged. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| * 1. The platoon leader plans the delay in sector or by subsequent battle positions IAW T&EO 71-2-0065.07-3000 Conduct Troop Leading Procedures Infantry Platoon. <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Obtains graphics and overlays for the operation.b. Identifies initial and subsequent delay positions.c. Includes company-level phase lines and graphics.d. Identifies general routes between delay positions.e. Locates and develops a series of squad delay positions.f. Conducts a reconnaissance and marks general routes between delay positions.g. Plans for possible offensive operations.h. Incorporates the company fire plan in his plan.i. Plans evacuation routes.j. Informs all personnel of disengagement criteria. 2. The platoon prepares for the delay. <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Prepares and marks routes and subsequent positions.b. Conducts reconnaissance and rehearsals.c. Constructs a series of alternate fighting positions.d. Prestocks supplies, fuel, and ammunition in designated positions.e. Constructs obstacles IAW the OPORD and T&EO, 07-3-1404.07-3000 Construct an Obstacle Infantry Platoon.f. Evacuates all unneeded personnel, supplies, and equipment according to company instructions.g. Destroys unneeded supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated. 3. The platoon conducts the delay. <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Occupies initial delay positions IAW company OPORD.b. Complies with all control measures and time constraints specified in the company order.c. Defends positions IAW T&EO 07-3-1115.07-3000, Conduct Defense Infantry Platoon. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>NOTE: The company commander may direct the platoons to attack or assault as apart of a company counterattack, based on battalion orders, the battalion commander's intent, and the current situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Implements the company fire support plan. e. Depending on the situation, the platoon withdraws to new positions to continue the delay. f. Disengages from the enemy IAW T&EO 07-3-1122.07-3000, Disengage from an Enemy Force Infantry Platoon. g. Continues delaying action until the unit reaches its final BP or the mission is altered by the company. <p>4. The platoon conducts follow-on operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves to new defensive positions and continues the defense IAW T&EO 07-3-1134.07-3000, Conduct Tactical Movement Infantry Platoon; and T&EO 07-3-1115.07-3000, Conduct Defense Infantry Platoon. b. Returns to friendly lines, conducts a passage of lines IAW T&EO 07-3-1125.07-3000, Conduct Passage of Lines Infantry Platoon; or T&EO 07-3-1137.07-3000, Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration Infantry Platoon. c. Moves into an assembly area IAW T&EO 71-2-2000.07-3000, Occupy Assembly Area. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1122

Disengage from an Enemy Force

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is operating as part of a company or a battalion and is in contact. The commander has ordered the platoon to disengage; he has specified a route for the disengagement and location to which the platoon is to move. Another element may be available to overwatch platoon movement. Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon breaks contact and moves to a designated point where neither the threat nor the platoon can observe the other or engage the other with direct fire. No friendly unit suffers personnel or equipment loss due to friendly fire. The unit complies with the ROE/ROI, Mission Instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop leading procedures and directs the platoon to disengage from an enemy force.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Conducts command and control of operations digitally:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Maintains digital situational awareness.(2) Submits digital reports and overlays.(3) Directs movement, positioning, and fires digitally.b. Ensures that rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) are disseminated to subordinate personnel.c. Breaks contact.d. Orders a direction and a distance to move (nine o'clock, 300 meters).2. The platoon follows the instructions of its leaders.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Selects routes that provide cover and concealment.b. Moves for the distance and in the direction ordered.c. Evacuates casualties.3. The platoon moves to a rally point.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Moves to the last designated enroute rally point, unless directed otherwise.b. Accounts for personnel and reorganizes, as required at the rally point.c. (Leader) Prepares the elements to continue the mission.* 4. The platoon leader receives the order to disengage while in a defensive position.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Makes an estimate of the situation and prepares a contingency plan to break contact or withdraw.b. Issues a warning order (WARNO) and or FRAGO.c. Ensures leaders brief the platoon members on the withdrawal signals.d. Designates covered and concealed routes to the rally point.e. If applicable, directs the squads to walk the routes during daylight and during limited visibility, as the time and the situation permits. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Indicates the method of withdrawal based on enemy pressure. g. Gives the signal to withdraw. h. Uses fire to disengage (smoke, indirect fire). <p>5. The platoon disengages gradually by thinning of lines (used when enemy pressure is close and heavy).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. (Selected personnel/vehicles) Disengage and move to the rear and assume overwatch positions. b. (Remaining personnel/vehicles in position) Increase the rate of fire to keep the enemy from overrunning the position. c. (Remaining personnel/vehicles) Withdraw to overwatch positions when the first group is in an overwatch position. d. (M249s) Move either first, last, or by rearward displacement by bounds (whichever provides best fire support for the movement), given the amount of enemy pressure and terrain. e. (Javelins) Move first because of the 75-meter minimum arming distance. (The final decision is based on the armor threat.) f. (Squad leaders) Move with the last element to withdraw. g. Employ smoke to provide concealment when personnel are moving in the open. h. Repeat this method of fire and movement to the rear, as necessary, until the entire platoon is disengaged. <p>6. The platoon disengages by sections/teams (when enemy pressure is so light thinning the lines is not necessary).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Engages the enemy with a high volume of fire using the designated sections/teams. b. Moves to the rear and assumes an overwatch position using the remaining sections/teams. c. Uses covered and concealed routes, if available. d. Repeats this method of fire and movement to the rear, as necessary, until the platoon has broken contact. <p>7. The platoon disengages by squads (when enemy pressure is so light that disengaging by sections/teams is not required).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Engages the enemy with a high volume of fire using the designated squad. b. Moves to the rear and assumes an overwatch position using the remaining squads. c. Repeats this method of fire and movement to the rear, as necessary, until the entire platoon is disengaged. <p>8. The platoon continues the withdrawal until enemy contact is broken.</p> <p>9. Upon completing disengagement, the platoon occupies a rally point or assembly area. The platoon leader:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidates and reorganizes, as needed. b. Reports the status to the company commander. c. Prepares to continue the mission. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1123

Conduct Tactical Road March (Infantry Platoon Dismounted)

Status: Active

Condition: The unit is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. The unit is operating separately or as part of the company. The enemy has the ability to attack and employ indirect fire and CAS. The unit has guidance provided by the Rules of Engagement (ROE) and from Mission Instructions such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOF), and Rules of Interaction. Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The unit crosses the start point and release point at the time specified in the order. The unit follows the prescribed route, rate of march, and interval without deviation unless required by enemy action or higher headquarters' orders. The main body is not surprised by the enemy. The unit complies with the ROE, Mission Instructions, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The senior leader receives the order and develops a plan for the road march IAW T&EO, Conduct Troop Leading Procedures.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Perform task, Conduct Command and Control of Operations Digitally.b. Organizes the unit for the march.c. Determines the route, if not provided.d. Sets the order of march.e. Determines the soldier's load, based on the mission.f. Establishes control measures.g. Plans for actions on enemy contact to include indirect fires along the route.h. Plans for the evacuation of any casualties.* 2. Leaders prepare the platoon for the mission.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Inspect the unit's personnel for the soldier's load, equipment, and readiness to move before beginning movement.b. Ensure all personnel are briefed on the plan and the route.* 3. The leader directs the quartering party to the start point.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Reconnoiters the route and the next location.b. Provides guides along the route as necessary.4. The unit maintains local security throughout the movement.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Maintains all-round observation at all times, to include air guards.b. Orients weapons, as directed, to establish unit local security.c. Uses the proper dispersion and camouflage.d. Reports and engages any enemy observed, as ordered.* 5. The unit leader conducts halts at regular intervals IAW the unit's SOP (as the tactical situation permits) to rest the personnel.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Positions the elements to ensure local security.b. Adjusts and redistributes equipment and performs foot hygiene.c. Ensures leaders check the condition of all personnel (for foot problems).d. Performs equipment cross loading as necessary.* 6. The leader controls the unit. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reacts to enemy contact IAW React to Contact drill or unit SOP. b. Reports the unit position to higher, as required, as a six-digit coordinate or uses higher-specified control graphics. <p>7. The unit arrives at the check or release points at the time specified.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Meets the quartering party guides. b. Passes through the release point without halting. <p>8. The unit complies with the ROE, Mission Instructions, higher headquarters and other special orders.</p> | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1125

Conduct Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is required to conduct a passage of lines forward or rearward. The enemy can attack with indirect fire, aircraft, or company-size mounted or dismounted forces. The unit has guidance provided by the Rules of Engagement (ROE) and from Mission Instructions such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOF), and Rules of Interaction. Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon moves all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon main body is not surprised by the enemy during departure of friendly lines. The unit complies with the ROE, Mission Instructions, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>NOTE: The digital navigation system equipment allows constant situational awareness between elements conducting a linkup, passage of lines, or relief operation (any operation that involves friendly units moving toward each other) to aid navigation and fratricide prevention. For example, a moving squad or vehicle can monitor the location of the stationary unit and linkup site using the position updates and digital graphics displayed on the digital display. The stationary unit can also monitor the moving unit's location as they move along the prescribed route to the linkup point by monitoring position updates on the digital display. As the moving force closes on the linkup site the stationary force is more aware of their presence and location reducing the possibility of fratricide. The moving unit does the same type monitoring to reduce fratricide potential. Once the moving unit nears the linkup location, the stationary unit should challenge them. This may be done digitally, visually, or with audible sounds using any prearranged signals. For example, the stationary unit can give the moving unit a series of flashes using an infrared source during limited visibility. The moving force responds with a pre-coordinated number of flashes. The challenge and password is also used between the two units digitally or verbally.</p> <p>* 1. The senior leader receives the company OPORD and initiates planning and coordination for the operation IAW Troop Leading Procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Perform task, Conduct Command and Control of Operations Digitally.b. Arranges a specific time and location for coordinating the passage of his unit with the stationary unit leader (subordinate leaders, FO, and senior NCO should be included).<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Conducts the passage as quickly as possible(2) Avoids masking the fires of the stationary unit.(3) Coordinates early in the planning process and maintains coordination and liaison during execution.(4) Increases the support from the stationary unit.(5) Plans for likely contingences. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>(6) When possible, bypasses the stationary unit.</p> <p>(7) When possible, avoids passing through a unit in contact with the enemy.</p> <p>c. Develops a plan that reduces the disruption of both his unit and the stationary unit.</p> <p>* 2. The senior leader or senior NCO meets with the stationary unit.</p> <p>a. Provides the unit's identification.</p> <p>b. Provides the size of the unit.</p> <p>c. Provides the time(s) of departure and return.</p> <p>d. Provides the area of the unit's operation.</p> <p>* 3. The senior leader or senior NCO coordinates with the stationary unit leader.</p> <p>a. Plans for exchange of enemy intelligence.</p> <p>b. Plans for reconnaissance of the position.</p> <p>c. Plans for exchange of tactical plans.</p> <p>d. Plans for exchange of communication information.</p> <p>e. Plans for recognition signals for the passage, both near and far.</p> <p>f. Plans for guides (down to squad level) and traffic control measures.</p> <p>g. Plans for security measures for the passage.</p> <p>h. Plans for specific control measures for the passage:</p> <p>(1) Contact points.</p> <p>(2) Passage lanes.</p> <p>(3) Passage points.</p> <p>(4) Release points.</p> <p>(5) Assembly areas (rearward passage).</p> <p>i. Coordinates fire support responsibilities and fire plans.</p> <p>j. Determines transfer of responsibility or action on enemy contact during the passage of lines.</p> <p>k. Coordinates combat service support (CSS) (items left on the position).</p> <p>l. Checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same area or adjacent areas, and exchanges any information that will assist them with their operation.</p> <p>* 4. During reconnaissance, the unit leader and subordinate leaders identify and locate all key positions and routes.</p> <p>a. Locate passage lanes.</p> <p>b. Locate passage points.</p> <p>c. Locate obstacles and safety lanes.</p> <p>d. Locate release points.</p> <p>e. Locate assembly areas (for rearward passage).</p> <p>f. Locate contact points, start points, and routes.</p> <p>g. Locate positions of the stationary force during the passage.</p> <p>h. Locate CS and CSS elements (CPs, OPs, and antiarmor and mortar positions).</p> <p>i. Locate enemy positions.</p> <p>5. The senior leader maintains OPSEC during the operation.</p> <p>NOTE: FBCB2 communications may be maintained during radio listening silence, as long as the radio silence switch is activated, ensuring the PLGR is not transmitting.</p> <p>a. Ensures the reconnaissance and other activities do not reveal the operation to the enemy.</p> <p>b. Moves the unit to a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting by the stationary leader.</p> <p>* 6. Before reentry passage, the senior leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefs subordinate elements on what is happening and what is going to happen. b. Confirms chain of command. c. Actions to be taken on contact. d. Actions to be taken in the absence of the leader. e. Provides time schedule, suspenses, and any limits on action. <p>7. The unit moves, at the designated time, to a covered and concealed position near the contact point, as directed by the senior leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Links up with guides that lead the security element from the contact point(s) through the passage lane(s) and passage point(s) to the release point(s). b. Clears the area forward of the release point(s) to the first covered and concealed position using the security element(s). c. Moves forward to the release point(s), when the area is cleared. d. Ensures the guides identify and account for all personnel passing through the passage point(s), contact point(s), and release points(s). <p>8. The unit is counted through the release points by the senior NCO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides the number of personnel in the unit. b. Tells how long to wait at the release points. c. Confirms the running password. d. Ensures movement is continuous throughout the passage. e. Conducts a security halt after the unit has moved beyond the stationary unit's FPF. <p>* 9. Both senior leaders are collocated to observe critical areas, make timely decisions, and facilitate battle handover.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensure the senior NCO does not move forward from the release point until the leader is sure he will not have to withdraw through the passage point. b. Ensure when subordinate elements have used separate passage points, the unit reforms by linkup. The unit moves to the objective or ORP after the linkup. <p>*10. The senior leader directs the unit to make a reentry through friendly lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes a reentry rally point. <p>NOTE: If in contact with the enemy, the unit does not halt. Contact party or guides from the stationary unit lead the unit through the passage points, or long-range recognition signals are used to keep moving.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Contacts the forward unit by radio and tells them, by use of arranged code word, that the unit is ready to reenter. (The senior leader may choose to keep the unit outside friendly lines until daylight.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Before reentry, if radio communications are possible, a reconnaissance and security team use the challenge and password to contact an OP. The OP then contacts the stationary senior leader. (2) If no communications can be established and no OPs can be found, the senior leader directs a small security team to reconnoiter the contact point. c. Confirms the message is acknowledged, and directs a security team to the contact point. (1) The security team establishes contact with the guide (far and near recognition signals). (2) The security team signals the unit forward, or goes back and leads the unit to the passage point. d. Directs the senior NCO to count and identify each squad as they pass through the passage point. e. Follows the guides, without halting, to a secure area behind the stationary unit. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>*11. The senior leader reports to the CP of the stationary unit. He gives the commander tactical information concerning the commander's area of responsibility.</p> <p>*12. The senior leader rejoins the unit and moves to a secure area.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Debriefs the unit.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. Consolidates and reorganizes as required.</p> <p>13. The unit complies with the ROE, Mission Instructions, higher headquarters and other special orders.</p> | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task
07-3-1131
Cross Water Obstacles (Infantry Platoon)
Status: Active

Condition: The platoon must cross a water obstacle. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a company. The platoon must provide its own security. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. ROE have been published. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon prevents the enemy from surprising the main body. The platoon moves all personnel and equipment across the water obstacle without loss or damage. The platoon prevents decisive engagement by the enemy. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The platoon leader plans the water obstacle crossing during planning of the combat mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selects primary and alternate crossing sites supporting the tactical plan based on map reconnaissance, patrols, or other information. b. Selects a tentative method for crossing. c. Plans for contingencies, such as enemy contact during the crossing. d. Directs special teams to rehearse their actions. e. Plans indirect fires. * 2. The platoon leader stops the platoon short of the tentative crossing site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sets up security. b. Assigns responsibilities for near-side and far-side security. 3. The reconnaissance team (platoon leader, RATELO, squad leaders, and security element) reconnoiters and selects the crossing site providing the best cover and concealment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selects a site that has at least one strong, well-rooted tree or similar anchor point on each side of the obstacle, 4 to 6 feet from the bank (for bridging). b. Selects a site that has low banks and shallow enough at the bank to permit a soldier to wade in or out of the water. c. Selects a site that has good positions for security on each flank that provide cover, concealment, observation, and fields of fire. 4. Personnel in the security area prepare for the water crossing under the supervision of the platoon sergeant. Noise, light, and camouflage discipline are maintained throughout the crossing. 5. The platoon members prepare for the water crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Waterproof all water-sensitive items. b. Unblouse trousers. c. Unbuckle chin straps on helmets. 6. The security team moves to and secures the near side of the crossing site. * 7. The platoon leader makes an estimate of the situation and determines the method for the platoon to cross the water obstacle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organizes the platoon in the required teams and elements (if not previously designated). b. Directs the platoon to prepare the necessary crossing equipment. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Moves the crossing teams to the crossing site. d. Crosses using one of the following techniques. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) One-rope bridge. (2) Two-rope bridge. (3) Poncho rafts. (4) Waterproof bags. (5) Empty canteens. (6) Water wings (made from extra trousers). (7) Boats (military or civilian). 8. The far-side security team crosses the water obstacle, using the selected technique. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sets up far-side security. b. Assists the remainder of the platoon in crossing the obstacle and directs them to security positions on the far-side. 9. Once the entire platoon is across and equipment is gathered, the far-side security team rejoins the platoon. *10. The leaders account for all personnel and equipment. 11. The platoon moves out of the area of the water obstacle as soon as possible and continues the mission. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1134

Conduct Tactical Movement (Mech Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon moves along a prescribed route or to a destination specified in the OPORD. This route can include movement through a built-up area. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a company. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fire and CAS available. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon moves on the specified route or arrives at the specified destination at the time specified in the order. The platoon main body is not surprised by the enemy. The platoon employs the movement formation and technique ordered by the leader. The platoon leader can show the location of adjacent units during movement. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader makes a map reconnaissance and chooses a route for movement that:<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Offers concealment from ground and air observation.b. Avoids skylining.c. Avoids moving directly forward from firing positions.d. Avoids open areas and potential kill zones.e. Avoids obvious avenues of approach.* 2. The platoon leader designates the movement technique to be used based on METT-TC.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Uses traveling when enemy contact is not likely.b. Uses traveling overwatch when enemy contact is likely.c. Uses bounding overwatch when enemy contact is expected.3. The platoon adjusts the formation based on METT-TC.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Closes wedges during limited visibility to maintain visibility between individuals, teams, and squads, and to maintain the rate of movement.b. Opens wedges as obstructions to movement and control diminish.4. When the traveling movement technique is performed, the platoon:<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Spaces the fire teams about 20 meters apart.b. Moves the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart.5. When the traveling overwatch movement technique is performed by the platoon as follows:<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Increase the distance between the lead squad and the platoon main body 50 meters to 100 meters.b. Use traveling overwatch by the lead squad and the trailing squads use traveling.6. When the bounding overwatch movement technique is performed by the platoon, the platoon leader must: | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures the bounding squad moves in the wedge formation. b. Move one squad, while the other squads with the platoon leader remain in a position to overwatch the bounding squad for its entire bound. c. Designate the next overwatch position, the routes to be used, and the sectors for the overwatching squads. d. Ensure bounds do not exceed visual overwatch. e. Direct bounds to stay in the greatest effective range of the overwatching weapons and fields of fire. <p>* 7. The platoon leader may choose to move by alternate or successive bounds. When the bounding squad moves, the squad:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Signals to the platoon leader it is beginning its movement. b. Uses a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound. c. Moves as quickly as possible while maintaining OPSEC. d. Moves so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element. e. Establishes an overwatch position, on completion of its bound, to overwatch the succeeding bound. f. Informs the platoon leader when it has finished its bound and is ready to overwatch. g. Alerts the platoon leader and overwatching element to any enemy detected, obstacles encountered, or danger areas. <p>8. The lead team employs a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allows. When the overwatch squad observes the bounding squad, the overwatch squad:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Occupies a position that allows observation and fire to cover the bounding squad's movement to its next overwatch position. b. Orients weapons on likely enemy positions. c. Maintains continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that can influence that route. d. Suppresses enemy units so the bounding element is not fixed, or any enemy detected, based on the SOP and the platoon leader's orders. e. Alerts the bounding squad and platoon leader of any enemy it detects. f. Prepares to bound when the bounding team assumes the overwatch position. <p>9. The platoon maintains security during movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility). b. Maintains noise and light discipline. c. Observes the sectors of responsibility assigned by leaders so the enemy cannot approach the platoon within 35 meters and no aircraft can attack the platoon without warning. d. Ensures the lead element reports obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the leader. <p>*10. The platoon leaders and squad leaders control the platoon's movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Position themselves where they can control movement. b. Position key weapons where the leaders can control them. c. Ensure the platoon members react as their leaders do (that is, when he gets down, they get down) and follow their leader's visual signals or oral commands. d. Assess the terrain for potential danger areas. e. Use hand-and-arm or flag signals until contact is made. f. Use visual and audio signals, such as flares, smoke, whistles, or voice commands, once contact is made. <p>*11. The platoon leader maintains the platoon location.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Expresses the platoon's location as a six-digit grid coordinate or by using current operational graphics. b. Shows the location of all platoon elements and leading, flanking, or trailing company elements. <p>12. The platoon moves in a built-up area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Halts in a covered and concealed position outside of the urban area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The platoon seeks cover and concealment and overwatch the urban area. (2) The platoon leader scans the urban area and determines the route through the urban area. (3) The platoon leader designates movement element and overwatch element. b. Moves as two elements: a movement element and an overwatch element. When necessary, these elements or parts of them exchange roles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The movement element (one or two squads/teams if terrain is open [for example, a wide street]) moves forward, scouts danger areas, and closes with the enemy. (2) The overwatch element (the rest of the platoon and supporting weapons) moves behind the lead element secures the flanks and rear, and it also provides fire support. c. Uses a covered and concealed route whenever possible. (1) The platoon moves along underground passages, through or behind buildings, along walls, and over rooftops. (2) The platoon avoids streets, alleys, and other open areas unless necessary. d. Makes the best use of cover and concealment when moving. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Personnel move in single file along the side of the street, staying close to the buildings. (2) Personnel move quickly and remain dispersed 3 to 5 meters apart. (3) Each soldier is assigned an area to observe on the opposite side of the street. (4) When moving with two squads abreast, each squad overwatches the buildings across the street, observing the stories above the opposite squad. e. Crosses the MOUT danger areas, using the greatest cover, concealment, speed, and overwatch. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Personnel use smoke, rubble, and debris for protection. (2) An element crosses as a dispersed group at the same time--not soldier by soldier. f. Moves while maintaining security. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Clears buildings as necessary to continue movement. (2) Identifies, reports, marks, and bypasses enemy obstacles and mines. g. Clears the urban area. The platoon leader reports when the platoon is through the urban area. h. Continues the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Reestablishes movement formation; assumes proper intervals. (2) Takes up hasty defensive positions. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1135

Conduct Actions at Danger Areas

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is part of a larger force and is moving dismounted and encounters a danger area that cannot be bypassed. The platoon must provide its own security. ROE have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon prevents the enemy from surprising the main body. The platoon moves all personnel and equipment across the danger area. The platoon prevents decisive engagement by the enemy. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader directs the platoon to take action on encountering a danger area.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Ensures the point man signals "danger area" (relayed throughout the platoon).b. Halts the platoon and maintains local security.c. Moves forward to the point man and confirms the danger area.* 2. The platoon leader directs the lead squad to reconnoiter the danger area and makes an estimate based on information received.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Directs the route for the platoon, if the danger area can be bypassed.b. Controls the crossing of the danger area. (Minimum time is spent in or near the danger area.) The platoon leader:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Informs all squad leaders of the situation.(2) Designates the near-side and far-side rally points.(3) Directs the positioning of near-side security.(4) Selects the crossing point that provides cover and concealment.(5) Assigns far-side security.* 3. The platoon leader selects the far-side clearing method based on observable terrain. The secured area must be large enough to allow full deployment of the remainder of the platoon.4. Near-side security provides security.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Observes to the flanks.b. Overwatches the crossing of the far-side security team.c. Warns of enemy approach before the main body is engaged.5. The far-side team reconnoiters the far side.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Crosses the danger area once near-side security is in place.b. Reconnoiters the far side and ensures that any terrain (small hills, folds, streambeds) that might conceal enemy positions is clear of the enemy.c. Establishes an OP forward of the cleared area.d. Signals to the squad leader that the area is clear; the message is relayed to the platoon leader.6. The platoon crosses the danger area. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses the method selected by the platoon leader to cross the danger area (in groups or wedge [file] or line). b. Uses near-side security to overwatch the crossing of the platoon. c. Crosses the danger area quickly and quietly, using the method designated by the platoon leader. (1) Line (all at once). (2) Wedge. (3) Small groups. (4) Individually. d. If contact is made, executes Battle Drill 2, React to Contact (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL). e. Establishes local security once across the danger area. f. Completes the crossing with the near-side security squad crossing the danger area and regains their positions in the formation. <p>7. The platoon continues mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Accounts for all members. b. Resumes tactical movement. c. Maintains proper formation and personnel intervals. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task
07-3-1137
Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration (Infantry Platoon)
Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is operating separately or as part of a company. The platoon must provide its own security. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire available. The platoon must move through an enemy area that has positions with gaps and weakly held areas. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon moves through the enemy area without the enemy determining the size, composition, destination, or intentions of the platoon. The platoon links up sufficient leaders, personnel, and equipment to accomplish the assigned task at the time and location specified in the order, or returns to friendly controlled areas for further operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders. Collateral damage is limited.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop leading procedures and prepares for operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts command and control of operations digitally. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maintains digital situational awareness. (2) Submits digital reports and overlays. (3) Directs movement, positioning and fires digitally. b. Conducts reconnaissance to find gaps, weaknesses, routes, and positions in an enemy area. (Lanes may be identified by the platoon reconnaissance.) c. Coordinates for passage of lines with forward unit, if necessary. Coordinates with flank units. d. Task organizes to facilitate control of the infiltration with the largest elements that can move undetected. e. Assigns the lanes to subordinate elements and squad release points. The subordinate leaders decide on specific infiltration routes, release points, and methods. Methods to use are individual lanes, staggered elements, or unit movement. f. Rehearses infiltration actions (use terrain models). g. Tailors the soldier's load to the minimum required for the operation. h. Makes contingency plans for enemy contact (before, during, and after infiltration) with all or part of the infiltrating platoon. i. Designates primary and alternate linkup points for elements. j. Ensures that rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) are disseminated to subordinate personnel. <p>2. The platoon infiltrates or exfiltrates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts passage of lines, as needed. b. Breaks down into infiltrating elements at designated release points. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Takes advantage of gaps and weaknesses in enemy positions, limited visibility, bad weather, and broken terrain affording cover and concealment. d. Avoids enemy contact. e. Records and reports ineffective enemy fire. f. Maintains dispersion and strict noise, light, and camouflage discipline. g. Enforces radio silence until either the objective or the ORP is reached by the entire platoon. h. Uses the method of infiltration determined during planning. <p>3. The platoon consolidates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves the infiltrating elements to the linkup points at the enemy's rear or on his flanks. b. Conducts linkup of all elements by the specified time. c. Moves to an ORP or assembly area. d. Reports to the higher headquarters, if required, and continues the operation. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1140

Conduct Operations with Armored Vehicles (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is ordered to conduct tactical operations with armored vehicles attached or in support. The enemy has antitank guided missiles, antitank guns, mines, indirect fire, and aircraft available. The platoon has the necessary support to operate with armored vehicles. ROE have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon successfully conducts the mission using the armored vehicles correctly. The platoon retains a sufficient fighting force capable of continuing the tactical operations. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader plans the mission IAW T&EO 71-2-0065.07-3000, Conduct Troop Leading Procedures Infantry Platoon.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Plans the employment and support of the armored vehicles.b. Ensures all leaders understand the limitations and capabilities of the armored force.c. Coordinates with the leader of the armored force to ensure his plan increases the armored capabilities.d. Conducts rehearsals.e. Plans for communicating with vehicles during the mission.* 2. The platoon sergeant plans for the logistical support of the armored force.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Plans for a daily resupply of POL products.b. Ensures maintenance support is available.c. Coordinates for ammunition resupply.d. Develops a recovery plan.3. The platoon conducts tactical operations with armored vehicles.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Provides infantry support to the armored force.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Finds, marks, or breaches antitank obstacles.(2) Detects, suppresses, or destroys enemy antitank weapons.(3) Designates targets for armored vehicles.(4) Protects armored vehicles in close terrain.b. Provides armored support to infantry forces.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Leads infantry in open terrain.(2) Provides a protected, fast-moving assault weapons systems.(3) Suppresses and destroys enemy weapons, bunkers, and tanks by fire and maneuver.(4) Provides transport when the enemy situations permits.4. The infantry platoon rides on the armored vehicles to increase movement and mission accomplishment. (The only advantage the infantry gains is speed and increased haul capability. This is only done when the enemy situation allows.)<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Avoids riding on the lead vehicle of a section.b. Positions infantry leaders with armored vehicle leaders.c. Assigns air guards and sectors of responsibility. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| d. Considers putting rucksacks, ammunition, and other equipment on the vehicles and have the infantry move on a separate avenue of approach. e. Dismounts personnel to clear danger areas. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1143

Conduct Antiarmor Ambush

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon occupies an ORP to execute an antiarmor ambush. The platoon operates separately or as part of a larger force. The platoon must provide its own security. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. The platoon is given PIR and other intelligence requirements. ROE have been published.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon emplaces the ambush NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon surprises the enemy. The platoon engages the specified enemy element (type or portion of the unit: security, main body, reaction force). The platoon destroys all the specified vehicles in the kill zone (armor, C2 vehicles, bridging equipment, ADA). The platoon withdraws all personnel and equipment from the objective, on order. All specified PIR and other intelligence requirements are obtained from the ambush site. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader prepares to conduct a leader's reconnaissance.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Designates key leaders to accompany him (includes FO, element leader, communications).b. Forms a security element for the party.c. Designates the ORP chain of command.d. Issues a contingency plan to the ORP leadership.* 2. The platoon leader conducts a leader's reconnaissance of the objective area.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Ensures the reconnaissance party moves undetected.b. Confirms the objective location and suitability for the ambush.c. Selects a kill zone.d. Posts a security element at the site and issues a five-point contingency before returning to the ORP.e. Confirms suitability of the assault and support element positions and routes back to the ORP.* 3. The platoon leader adjusts the plan based on the information from the reconnaissance.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Assigns positions.b. Designates withdrawal routes to the ORP.c. Designates control measures on the ambush site.d. Adjusts the fire support plan as needed.* 4. The security element leader positions his element for the antiarmor ambush.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Moves the security teams from the ORP and occupies designated positions on both flanks of the kill zone.b. Ensures the security teams move undetected to positions where they can secure all elements and cover the withdrawal of the assault and support elements. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>c. Ensures coverage of dismounted avenues of approach in the ambush site.</p> <p>* 5. The support element leader moves his element from the ORP to the designated positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves undetected. b. Moves to positions that provide supporting fires for the armor-killer team(s) and covers their withdrawal. <p>NOTE: The support element can be positioned with the assault element.</p> <p>* 6. The assault element leader organizes the squad into armor-killer teams.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves them in position as directed by the platoon leader. b. Ensures positions have: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) A good field of fire in the kill zone. (2) Cover and concealment. (3) An obstacle between the team and the kill zone. (4) Covered and concealed withdrawal routes. (5) Fire control measures established including assigned primary and alternate sectors of fire. <p>7. The platoon makes final preparation once in position. Leaders position themselves where they can control their units and weapons.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. (Designated platoon members) Emplace obstacles to canalize the enemy or to stop him in the kill zone (if possible). b. Place Claymore mines to cover the kill zone and the platoon's withdrawal routes. c. Prepare covered and concealed positions while waiting for the enemy. <p>8. The security element alerts the platoon of the enemy approach.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports the direction of movement, size of target, formation, number and type of vehicles. b. Reports any special weapons and equipment carried. <p>* 9. Upon enemy arrival, the platoon leader assesses the situation and initiates the ambush.</p> <p>NOTE: If the enemy force is too large, the platoon leader directs that the ambush is not initiated unless the platoon is detected. If the enemy does not detect the platoon, the platoon allows the enemy to pass. The platoon leader calls in a SITREP and continues the mission as directed by the company commander.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiates the ambush when the majority of the enemy is in the kill zone by using one of the following methods: (1) A command-detonated antiarmor mine, if the enemy is entirely mounted and the mine is available. (2) Dragon/Javelin, if fields of fire are over 65 meters and mines are not available. (3) Multiple AT4/LAW fire, if fields of fire are less than 100 meters and mines are not available. <p>NOTE: Ensure the weapon used to initiate the ambush engages the high-value target (for example, vehicles not people).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Ensures the remainder of the armor-killer team opens well-aimed, interlocking fire with M60s/M249s, LAWs, M16s, and grenade launchers (if in range) throughout the kill zone to its flanks and beyond. (M203's can be used against lightly armored vehicles, groups of personnel, and to illuminate the kill zone.) <p>NOTE: When using AT4s/LAWs, the armor-killer team(s) fires multiple shots on each target (volley fire).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Controls the platoon's fires IAW the established fire control measures. d. Calls for indirect fire to impact in the kill zone as soon as possible after the initiation of the ambush. e. Ensures the platoon destroys the enemy without becoming decisively engaged. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>f. Signals to cease fire when return fire has stopped.</p> <p>NOTE: Because of the speed with which other armored forces can reinforce the enemy in the ambush site, the leader should plan to keep the engagement short and the withdrawal quick. The platoon will not clear through the kill zone as in other ambushes.</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader prepares to withdraw the platoon.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Notifies the security teams when the ambush team is ready to withdraw. Ensures personnel and equipment accountability. Directs the withdrawal to the ORP or a designated rally point. <p>*11. The platoon leader provides a SITREP to company headquarters.</p> <p>12. En route, or upon occupation of the rally point, the platoon leader disseminates information within the platoon.</p> | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1145

Conduct Point Ambush

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is ordered to conduct an ambush. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger unit. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire available. The platoon is occupying an ORP. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The ambush is emplaced NLT the time specified in the order. The platoon surprises the enemy and engages the enemy main body. The platoon kills or captures all enemy in the kill zone and destroys equipment based on the commander's intent. The platoon withdraws all personnel and equipment from the objective, on order, within the time specified in the order. The platoon obtains all PIR from the ambush. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders. Collateral damage is limited.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader prepares for the ambush in the ORP or assembly area.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Conducts troop leading procedures and develops a tentative plan.b. Designates an assault element, support element, and security element.c. Plans indirect fires in the kill zone to destroy the enemy and cover the withdrawal of the platoon.* 2. The platoon leader prepares to conduct a leader's reconnaissance.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Designates key leaders to accompany him (includes FO, element leader, communications).b. Forms a security element for the party.c. Designates the ORP chain of command.d. Issues a contingency plan to the ORP leadership.* 3. The platoon leader conducts a leader's reconnaissance of the objective area.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Ensures the reconnaissance party moves undetected.b. Confirms the objective location and suitability for the ambush.c. Selects a kill zone.d. Posts a security element at the site and issues a five-point contingency before returning to the ORP.e. Confirms suitability of the assault and support element positions and routes back to the ORP.* 4. The platoon leader adjusts the plan based on the information from the reconnaissance.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Assigns positions.b. Designates withdrawal routes back to the ORP.c. Designates control measures on the ambush site. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 5. The platoon leader designates the ambush formation based on his estimate of the situation: linear or L-shaped.</p> <p>6. The security teams depart the ORP and move to designated positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Secure the flanks of the ambush site, provide detection and early warning of enemy approach, and have cover and concealment. b. Remain motionless and observe noise and light discipline. <p>NOTE: A security team remains in the ORP (if the platoon plans to return to the ORP after the execution of the ambush.)</p> <p>7. Once security teams are in position or on the platoon leader's order, the support element departs the ORP and moves into position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses covered and concealed routes. b. Emplaces mines and obstacles. c. Identifies sectors of fire for all weapons, especially machine guns. d. Emplaces limiting stakes to prevent friendly fires from hitting other elements. e. Emplaces Claymore mines and other protective devices. f. Overwatches the movement of the assault element in position. <p>8. Once the support element is in position or on order of the platoon leader, the assault element moves into position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies individual sectors of fire as assigned by the platoon leader and emplaces aiming stakes. b. Emplaces Claymore mines and other protective devices. c. Emplaces Claymore mines or other explosives in dead space in the kill zone. d. Camouflages positions. e. Moves the weapon's selector lever off SAFE. (Moving the selector lever on the weapon causes a metallic click that could compromise the ambush if personnel wait until the enemy is in the kill zone. This is the last action performed by all personnel before waiting to initiate the ambush.) <p>9. The security team spots the enemy and alerts the platoon leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports the direction of movement, size of the target, and any special weapons and equipment carried. b. Keeps the platoon leader informed if any enemy forces are following the lead force. <p>*10. The platoon leader alerts other elements on receipt of the report and determines if the enemy force is too large or if his ambush can engage successfully.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs the ambush is not initiated if the enemy force is too large, unless the platoon is detected. b. Allows the enemy to pass and sends a SALUTE report to the company commander and continues the mission. <p>NOTE: If any member of the platoon is detected, the detected soldier initiates the ambush by firing and notifies the rest of the platoon, "Enemy right (left, front)."</p> <p>*11. If the enemy force is not too large, the platoon leader initiates the ambush.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses the highest casualty-producing weapon (preferably, a command detonated Claymore mine.) b. Ensures the assault and support elements deliver fire with the heaviest, most accurate volume possible. To conceal friendly positions, especially at night, fire may be delivered solely by hand grenades and 40-mm grenade launcher. Initiate other fires if enemy activity persists in the ambush kill zone. c. Illuminates the kill zone as necessary during periods of limited visibility. <p>*12. The platoon leader gives the signal to lift or shift fires if the target is to be assaulted.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs the support element to lift or shift fires before the assault by the assault element. b. Directs the FO to lift indirect fires. <p>13. The assault element assaults before the enemy can react.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Kills or captures all enemy in the kill zone. b. Establishes security for specialty teams. c. Uses individual movement techniques or bounds by fire teams depending on the situation. <p>14. Specialty teams (demolition, aid and litter, search, EPW) to accomplish their assigned tasks immediately after the assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Secure all EPWs and move them to the designated collection point. b. Search all dead enemy personnel using appropriate search techniques and mark the bodies. c. Evacuate casualties IAW the OPORD or platoon SOP. d. Prepare enemy equipment for demolition. <p>*15. The platoon leader calls for planned indirect fire or smoke to cover the withdrawal, when required.</p> <p>*16. The platoon leader halts the platoon out of enemy observation or direct fire (normally at least one terrain feature away) and disseminates information.</p> <p>17. The platoon withdraws to the ORP or rally point on order and in the sequence designated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Account for all personnel and equipment. b. Reorganize into movement elements and continue movement. c. Recover rucksacks and other equipment left at the ORP during the ambush. <p>*18. The platoon leader provides a SITREP to company headquarters IAW the platoon SOP and continues the mission.</p> | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task
07-3-1200
Employ Fire Support (Infantry Platoon)
Status: Active

Condition: The platoon has been given a company order to conduct combat operations. The enemy is dug in and defending in a deliberate defense or is expected to attack the platoon position with motorized and or dismounted forces. ROE have been published.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon leader and platoon FO plan and execute fires that support the platoon leader's scheme of maneuver or defensive plan. Friendly fires stop or slow the enemy. Fires neutralize, suppress, or destroy enemy weapons and fires. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The platoon leader and platoon FO make a tentative fire support plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Develop a fire support plan IAW the company commander's plan, guidance, and intent. b. Develop a plan for the priority targets (if allocated by higher) addressing targets in depth, timing, and control of fires. c. Integrate COLT (if allocated) in the observation and designation plan. 2. The platoon FO ensures the platoon leader is informed of all the assets available and weapons systems (mortars) operational. 3. The platoon leader and FO conduct a leader's reconnaissance and plan fires for the offense. (The situation may not allow for a leader's reconnaissance. He may only be able to do a map reconnaissance as METT-T dictates.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reconnoiter known enemy locations. b. Reconnoiter dominant and key terrain. c. Reconnoiter enemy counterattack routes. d. Reconnoiter targets of concern (those targets the maneuver commander believes, if not fired on, will deter the success of the maneuver). e. Reconnoiter possible enemy locations. f. Develop platoon fire plan using the results of the reconnaissance. * 4. The platoon leader and FO plan fires for the defense operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify enemy avenues of approach. b. Cover possible enemy hull-down firing positions in the engagement area. c. Ensure coverage of planned and existing obstacles in the engagement area. d. Plan FPFs in front of the battle positions. e. Plan fires on and to the rear of platoon positions (in case of withdrawal). * 5. The platoon leader and FO plan fires for the consolidation phase of the attack or defense. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensure coverage of enemy counterattack routes and counterattack forces. b. Cover enemy withdrawal routes. c. Plan fires on possible enemy positions in the platoon area of operation. d. Plan targets that would support resuming the offense. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 6. The platoon leader and FO plan the type of munitions needed to accomplish the desired results. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consider HE with fuze combinations. b. Plan smoke for obscuration. c. Plan DPICM. d. Plan illumination. * 7. The platoon leader and FO synchronize fires with the scheme of maneuver and plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Synchronize artillery with the maneuver plan. b. Determine effects required on the enemy (suppress, isolate, obscure, neutralize, destroy, deceive, or disrupt). c. Request for mortars and artillery. d. Plan priority of fires (should support the main effort). e. Identify priority targets. f. Consider close air support. g. Identify ammunition restrictions and controlled supply rate. h. Consider dismount areas. i. Identify targets during consolidation. j. Develop graphical fire control measures. k. Decide whether priority targets should be retained at platoon level or given to the squads. l. Confirm whether the use of smoke, FASCAM, illumination, or DPICM is restricted and who controls them. * 8. The platoon leader approves the platoon fire support execution matrix and distributes it to the squad leaders as a part of the OPORD. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures the platoon FO provides a copy of the fire plan to the company. b. Ensures the fire support plan is incorporated into the platoon rehearsals. * 9. The platoon leader and platoon FO execute fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensure all available supporting fires are executed in a timely manner and accomplish the prescribed result IAW the fire plan and execution matrix. b. Ensure fires hit critical and vulnerable areas of enemy formations or positions. c. Ensure friendly fires stop or slow enemy movement and suppress enemy fires. d. Ensure the employment of smoke does not degrade the platoon mission. e. Adjust the priorities of fire as the battle progresses. f. Use the COLT when available. *10. The platoon leader reports battle damage caused by indirect fire to the company at the close of each fire mission. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1308

Secure and Defend Battalion Trains

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon has received an OPORD/FRAGO mission requiring the unit to secure and defend the battalion combat trains area. The platoon can be opposed by as much as a motorized rifle company. ROE have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon completes all preparations specified for the defense not later than the time specified in the order. Combat trains are not surprised by the enemy. The platoon engages OPFOR units of company-size or smaller and inflicts 50 percent or more casualties. The platoon sustains no more than 30 percent casualties. Complies with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">Platoon provides security for the leader's reconnaissance.<ol style="list-style-type: none">Performs leader's reconnaissance of the tentative defensive position.Searches to ensure it is free of enemy, mines, and booby traps.Establishes local security.Surveys for contamination (NBC).* Leaders designate sectors of fire and general locations for OPs, vehicles, M60s/SAWs, and Dragons based on METT-T. Positions M8 alarm to provide NBC warning within 5 minutes of occupying observation post <p>NOTE: At night, the designation of positions must be more exact. Leaders can elect to reconnoiter the area first, position the OP/LP, and then have guides bring the other members into position.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Designated security or OP team(s) moves to assigned position(s).<ol style="list-style-type: none">Positions M8 alarm to provide NBC warning within 5 minutes of occupying observation post.Positions alarm within range of supporting small arms fire.Provides cover and concealment for the occupant(s).Uses concealed routes to and from OPs.Establishes communications from OPs to unit command post (primary means should be wire, supplemented by messenger and radio).Disseminates locations to all personnel in the sector.Provides early warning of contact.Provides continuous early warning out to a range that warns of enemy observation, direct fire or assault on the main body.Detects all enemy activity within vicinity of the unit's position.Emplaces expedient early warning devices before dark, if possible.Demonstrates correct use of current challenge and password.Repositions OPs at alternate sites as required by changing visibility conditions.* Platoon leader designates primary, and alternate, and supplementary fighting positions for key weapons/vehicles (where applicable), while emplacing remainder of platoon.<ol style="list-style-type: none">Positions machine guns to allow grazing fire along the most likely dismounted avenue of approach. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Positions antiarmor weapons to cover likely armor avenues of approach. c. Ensures positions are mutually supporting along armor and dismounted infantry avenues of approach. d. Positions M203 grenade launchers to cover dead space in terrain outside hand grenade range. <p>* 5. Platoon occupies defensive positions.</p> <p>NOTE: The leader establishes task priorities. Normally, these are in the SOP, but they can be modified as needed, based on METT-T considerations, by the platoon leader or the company commander.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Leaders place fighting positions to engage targets in designated sector of fire covering the most dangerous avenues of approach first. The range of weapons and type weapon determine sector of fire. b. Leaders assign all personnel to a fighting position. c. Platoon members physically reconnoiter to the front of each position to become familiar with terrain, locate dead space, and to view the position from the enemy perspective. d. Platoon members emplace Claymore mines. e. Platoon members make physical contact with adjacent position and select covered and concealed routes to those positions. f. Platoon leader coordinates/contacts adjacent units to: overlap. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Establish boundary responsibilities. (2) Discover and eliminate any gaps. (3) Ensure observation and fires g. Platoon prepares range cards and forwards them to leaders within 15 minutes of positioning. h. Platoon installs aiming stakes. i. Platoon clears fields of fire. j. Platoon emplaces obstacles IAW company obstacle plan. k. Platoon digs fighting positions to armpit depth with 18 inches of parapet. l. Platoon constructs overhead cover for fighting positions. m. Platoon camouflages positions/vehicles from aerial and ground observation (ensures fighting positions cannot be detected from a distance of more than 35 meters to the front). n. Platoon stockpiles ammunition, food and water. o. Platoon constructs alternate and supplementary position. p. Leaders inform platoon members of CP location. <p>* 6. Leader (with FIST or FO if applicable), plans for indirect fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Along enemy avenues of approach. b. At known or likely enemy positions. c. Leaders plan final protective fires (if allocated). d. Register and adjust target reference points (if available). <p>7. RATELO establishes communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses wire as primary communications if available. b. Ensures platoon/company CP has communication with OPs, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units and fire support. c. Conducts periodic communications check to ensure that all are operational. d. Plans and provides alternate means of communications. <p>* 8. Unit leader(s) prepares sector sketch to show:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Main terrain features and the range to them (identifies these in the unit leader's sector of fire). b. All primary fighting positions. c. Primary and secondary sectors of fire for each position. d. Type of weapon in each position and fire control measures (FPF, PDF, or FPL). | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. OPs and unit leader position. f. Dead space. g. Obstacles. h. Direction of north. <p>* 9. Unit leader(s) forwards a copy of the sketch to the platoon leader within 30 minutes of being assigned the sector.</p> <p>*10. Platoon leader prepares a platoon sector sketch that includes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Platoon sector or engagement area. b. Unit positions (primary, alternate, and supplementary) and sectors of fire. c. Vehicle, Dragon, and M60/SAW positions with primary sectors of fire; FPL or PDF for primary vehicle weapon systems; M60s/SAWs; and target reference points (TRPs). d. Observation posts and patrol routes (if any). e. Maximum engagement lines for primary weapon systems. f. Indirect fire targets and FPFs if allocated. g. Direction of north. h. Unit designation (up to company level). i. Date-time group. j. Platoon command post. k. Forwards a copy of platoon sketch to trains OIC within 1 hour of assigning squad leaders sectors. <p>11. OPs detect and correctly identify the enemy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify before platoon/company is engaged. b. Report using SALUTE format. c. Alert unit personnel. <p>12. Unit personnel occupy fighting positions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. IAW the unit alert plan. b. Within 1 minute of initial warning. <p>13. Unit reports enemy contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports using SALUTE format to company HQ within 1 minute of contact. b. Renders additional situation reports as situation changes. <p>14. OPs return to unit's position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Use covered and concealed routes back to defensive position. b. Avoid decisive engagement. <p>15. Platoon requests indirect fire or close air support if available and applicable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiates proper call for fire procedure within 1 minute of target acquisition. b. Adjusts fire within 30 seconds of impact. <p>16. Platoon reacts to enemy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Platoon executes obstacle plan IAW the OPORD/FRAGO. b. Platoon fires organic weapons as enemy comes into range or as ordered to do so. c. Leaders control distribution and rate of fire to ensure a continuous volume of effective fire is placed on the enemy. d. Leaders reposition vehicles, units and individuals to alternate and supplementary positions using covered and concealed routes, as needed. e. Platoon leader initiates final protective fires. f. Platoon leader directs counterattacks of reserves to eject enemy penetrations. g. Unit defends until it repels enemy or receives orders from higher HQ to disengage. h. Unit sustains no friendly casualties due to friendly fire. <p>17. Platoon reacts to indirect fire.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Any platoon member can yell "incoming" to alert platoon. Platoon alerts subordinate elements by any communications means available. b. Unit members seek protection under the overhead cover of their fighting position. If in the open, personnel move to fighting position or out of area. c. Personnel mask. d. Drivers move vehicles out of impact area to alternate positions, if applicable. <p>*18. Leaders reorganize the platoon, establishing unit chains of command.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Submits situation report to company commander. b. Redistribute ammunition. c. Ensure OPs, key weapons and positions are manned. d. Ensure casualties are treated and evacuated as necessary. e. Submit casualty reports. f. Update personnel roster. g. Continue mission as soon as tactical situation permits. h. Control EPW in accordance with the five S's. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1311

Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon expects to be overrun by enemy offensive operations. They have evacuated as much equipment as possible, and must destroy remaining equipment to prevent capture and use by the enemy. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon destroys all combat vehicles to prevent enemy use. The platoon destroys all tactical vehicles. The platoon destroys all spare parts to prevent enemy use. The platoon ensures medical supplies are not destroyed. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. The unit complies with the ROE/ROI, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. Leader performs troop leading procedures.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Conducts command and control of operations digitally:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Maintain digital situational awareness.(2) Submit digital reports and overlays.(3) Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally.b. Ensures that rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) are disseminated to subordinate personnel.* 2. Unit leaders supervise emergency destruction of equipment.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Ensure personnel know destruction assignments and priorities.b. Ensure destruction of equipment installed in vehicles.c. Report the destruction of equipment through command channels.3. Unit personnel destroy combat vehicles.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Remove portable fire extinguishers and discharge fixed fire extinguishers.b. Destroy vital components that cannot be removed.c. Open hydraulic drain valve.d. Douse vehicle with fuel removed from fuel tanks or other sources.e. Use incendiary grenades or other suitable devices to ignite vehicles.4. Unit personnel destroy tactical vehicles.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Use axe, pick, mattock, sledgehammer, or other heavy implement to destroy all vital components.b. Use sufficiently heavy instrument to destroy engine cylinder blocks and heads, transmissions, power transfer cases, and communications equipment.c. Use a bayonet or other cutting tool to slash tires.d. By placing it in and around the vehicles, destroy ammunition that cannot be moved with available transportation.e. Douse the vehicles with fuel removed from fuel tanks or other sources.f. Use incendiary grenades or other means to ignite vehicle. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 5. Unit personnel destroys repair parts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Break, destroy or incinerate by use of grenades or other suitable devices. b. Douse repair parts with fuel removed from fuel tanks or other sources. c. Use incendiary grenades or other suitable means to ignite repair parts. 6. Unit ensures medical supplies are not destroyed. 7. Unit destroys all supplies or materials which cannot be evacuated. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1316

Conduct Maintenance Operations (Infantry/Mech Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The unit is tactically deployed and is currently engaged in combat. Publications are available for all authorized equipment. Unit must perform maintenance due to limited support available. Repair parts are available through normal supply channels. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: Unit members accomplish PMCS in accordance with unit SOP. Unit members make emergency repairs as far forward as possible. The unit complies with the ROE/ROI, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. Leader performs troop leading procedures.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Conducts command and control of operations digitally:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Maintain digital situational awareness.(2) Submit digital reports and overlays.(3) Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally.b. Ensures that rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) are disseminated to subordinate personnel.* 2. Senior leader/ senior NCO ensures PMCS standing operating procedures are followed.* 3. Senior NCO supervises maintenance of platoon equipment.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Keeps a preventive maintenance schedule and record on hand for each item of equipment, as required.b. Schedules PMCS appropriately.c. Ensures properly recorded maintenance, lubrication, and days on which equipment is not available.d. Makes proper disposition of the form when a new form is prepared or when equipment has been transferred.* 4. Senior NCO directs PMCS.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Directs scheduled PMCS and notifies operators and crews accordingly.b. Ensures operator and crew, publications, tools, equipment, POL, supplies, and repair parts on hand for scheduled PMCS.c. Ensures operator/crew performs PMCS in accordance with the applicable publications and scheduled services on DD Form 314.d. Monitors and spot-checks PMCS.5. Unit members perform preventive maintenance.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Perform PMCS as directed by appropriate TM and LO.b. Note all malfunctions. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 6. Senior NCO provides maintenance assistance and instruction to unit performing PMCS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Instructs subordinate NCOs, operators, and crews in proper operating and maintenance procedures as outlined in the applicable TM and LO. b. Instructs subordinate NCOs in the correct interpretation and application of instructions contained in appropriate TMs, TBs, and other technical publications and directives. c. Maintains control of every DA Form 348. * 7. Senior NCO supervises PMCS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checks to ensure that the operator of each equipment item has the TM-10 for the equipment and that it is used. b. Coordinates record of faults which cannot be corrected on the spot. c. Assigns specific maintenance objectives for each scheduled period of preventive maintenance. d. Spot-checks equipment to ensure PMCS have been correctly performed. 8. Unit members perform unit maintenance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Perform maintenance on their assigned vehicles, weapons and equipment when tactical situation permits. b. Inform maintenance personnel or company supply element as soon as possible of any maintenance problems beyond unit capabilities. 9. Unit members perform emergency repair. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Make repairs in accordance with equipment TM. b. Make repairs as far forward as possible to ensure continued function of equipment. 10. The unit recovers damaged vehicles and equipment IAW appropriate FM and SOP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The unit recovers the vehicle using-- (1) A field-expedient recovery means. (2) Organic vehicles and recovery assets. (3) Higher headquarters recovery assets. b. The unit evacuates disabled vehicles and equipment using organic or higher headquarters assets. The equipment is evacuated to the closest maintenance collection point. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1401

Establish a Roadblock/Checkpoint (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon leader receives the WO to construct a roadblock/checkpoint. The platoon is provided the rules of engagement; information about to the direction of the threat; suitable construction materials, tools, and transportation. Continuous operations (day and night) are envisioned. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield and in the area of operations. ROE was published.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon plans and constructs the roadblock/checkpoint IAW the commander's guidance. The position and orientation of the barriers prevent passage or limit entry and exit by personnel and vehicles in or from the specified area. The platoon leader ensures all platoon members understand and obey the ROE. The platoon is not surprised by any infiltrating military or paramilitary forces.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader receives the mission from the company/company team commander to establish a roadblock/checkpoint.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Clarifies any questions on the rules of engagement (ROE).b. Clarifies the purpose of the roadblock/checkpoint.c. Clarifies the type of roadblock/checkpoint (deliberate or hasty). (See FM 7-10, Appendix A.)* 2. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures and issues OPORD. (See Conduct Troop Leading Procedures.)* 3. The platoon leader selects the roadblock/checkpoint site.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Sites tactically so the roadblock/checkpoint cannot be seen more than a short distance away to prevent drivers from avoiding it. Using culverts, bridges, deep cuts, sharp bends or dips in a road is ideal.b. Ensures the roadblock/checkpoint is not positioned so it is such a sudden surprise drivers will not have enough time to stop safely.c. Places roadblock/checkpoint in depth.d. Considers the balance between force protection and the ROE when positioning roadblock/checkpoints.* 4. The platoon leader organizes the platoon to operate the roadblock/checkpoint 24 hours.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Assigns male, and female vehicle search teams in each platoon.b. Assigns close-in and far security or support-by-fire positions.c. Establishes and maintains a command and control cell to communications with higher headquarters and control operations.5. The platoon constructs the roadblock/checkpoint according to the platoon leader's plan. (For an example of a layout, see FM 90-8, Appendix G.)<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Emplaces two parallel obstacles across the road. The barriers should have gaps negotiable only by slowly moving vehicles to allow the search or security teams time to observe them closely. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Ensures the number and separation of obstacles are based on the amount of traffic to be held in the search area. c. Establishes a second position to block personnel or vehicles attempting to flee. d. Marks all perimeter barriers, wires, and limits with warning signs. (Signs in the native language and in English should be used, if available.) e. Establishes female search areas. f. Establishes vehicle search areas. g. Establishes security force positions. h. Prepares drop holes for searcher protection in the event of problems during the search and to prevent the searchers from masking the security element fires. i. Ensures there is adequate lighting for night operations. j. Ensures the civilian population understands the roadblock/checkpoint is a preventive and not a punitive measure. k. Ensures a translator is present at the roadblock/checkpoint. 6. The platoon maintains security. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures an element is positioned and concealed an appropriate distance (one hundred to several hundred meters) from the roadblock/checkpoint to prevent the escape of any vehicle or person attempting to turn back on sighting the roadblock/checkpoint. b. Establishes a rest area for personnel near the search area so personnel can be assembled quickly as a reserve force. c. Searches all vehicles and personnel for certain items as directed by the company/company team commander. d. Develops measures for protecting searchers from possible explosives (if possible dig the vehicle search area in the ground to deflect the blasts upward). e. Ensures the close-in security element that fields of fire are not masked. f. Uses sentries and patrols to prevent possible ambush. 7. The platoon reacts to hostile actions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Fires warning shots to deter the breach, if authorized by the ROE. b. Controls exfiltrating civilians with the greatest force necessary. c. Uses the greatest force necessary to disarm exfiltrating military or paramilitary forces. d. Attacks to disable all vehicles attempting to breach or flee. e. Destroys vehicles that return or initiate fires. f. Destroys vehicles that persist in attempting a breach. * 8. The platoon leader disseminates and enforces the ROE. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures personnel are aware of the ROE and the limitations regarding search, arrest, and use of force. b. Ensures compliance with ROE by positioning himself close to the search area. c. Ensures when searching, politeness and consideration are always shown. 9. The platoon keeps the enemy off balance by moving the roadblock/checkpoint. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes SOPs for moving the roadblock/checkpoint. b. Stores prepackaged roadblock/checkpoint equipment on vehicles and rehearses setting up quickly. c. Makes roadblock/checkpoint turnover procedures as detailed as minefield turnover or relief-in-place procedures. 10. The platoon continually improves the roadblock/checkpoint as time and situation permit. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1403

Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle (Infantry/Mech Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is operating as part of a larger force. The lead squad identifies a wire obstacle reinforced with mines. The obstacle cannot be bypassed and enemy positions are on the far side of the obstacle. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fires available. ROE have been published.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon makes a breach in the obstacle and moves all effective personnel and equipment through the breach in the time specified by the company commander. The platoon moves the support element or follow-on forces through the breach. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader, RATELO, platoon FO, and one machine gun team move forward to link up with the squad leader of the lead squad.* 2. The platoon leader determines the platoon can breach the obstacle. (If the platoon leader determines he cannot breach the obstacle, he notifies the company commander and prepares to support a company breach.)<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Identifies the obstacle and enemy positions covering it by fire.b. Identifies the size of the enemy force engaging the squad (the number of enemy automatic weapons, the presence of any vehicles, and the employment of indirect fires are indicators of enemy strength).c. Determines a breach point.d. Identifies a covered and concealed route to the breach point.e. Identifies a support by fire position large enough for a squad reinforced with machine guns.* 3. The platoon leader directs one squad to support the movement of the other squad(s) to the breach point.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Indicates the support-by-fire position and route to it.b. Indicates the enemy position to be suppressed.c. Informs the squad leader of the breach point and the route the rest of the platoon will take.d. Gives instructions for lifting and shifting fires.* 4. The platoon leader designates one squad as the breach squad, and the remaining squad as the assault squad once the breach has been made. (The assault squad may add its fires to the base-of-fire element. Normally, it follows the covered and concealed route of the breach squad and assaults through immediately after the breach is made.)* 5. The designated squad moves to and establishes a base of fire.* 6. The platoon sergeant moves forward to the base-of-fire element with the second machine gun team and assumes control of that element.7. The breach squad prepares for the breach. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares teams, consisting of a demolition specialist and a lane marker. b. Ensures each member wears body armor, if available, and carries three white smoke grenades for self-screening during the breaching operation. c. Prepares demolitions. d. Carries protective masks while conducting the breach. e. Carries wire cutters, work gloves, and any additional required equipment. f. Prepares smoke pots for immediate use upon breaching the obstacle. <p>8. On the platoon leader's signal, the base-of-fire element initiates fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Destroys or suppresses enemy crew-served weapons. b. Obscures the enemy's ability to place effective fires on the obstacle with smoke (M203, mortar, or artillery). c. Sustains suppressive fires at the lowest possible level. <p>* 9. The platoon leader leads the breach and assault squads along the covered and concealed route to the breach point.</p> <p>10. The platoon FO calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the platoon leader.</p> <p>*11. The breach squad leader directs actions of his squad to breach the obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs one fire team to support the movement of the other fire team to the breach point. b. Identifies the breach point. c. Confers with the platoon leader to ensure continuous suppressive fires from the base-of-fire element to isolate the breach point. d. Leads the breaching fire team to the breach point using the covered and concealed route. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The squad leader and breaching fire team leader employ smoke grenades to obscure the breach point. The platoon base-of-fire element shifts direct fires away from the breach point and continues to suppress key enemy positions. The platoon FO lifts indirect fires or shifts them beyond the obstacle. (2) The breaching fire team leader positions himself and the automatic rifleman on one flank of the breach point to provide close-in security. (3) The grenadier and rifleman of the breaching fire team probe up to the obstacle and inspect it for pressure prongs and trip wires. (4) Demolitions are exploded to breach the obstacle, if available. If no demolitions are available, the breach personnel must physically cut the wire obstacles. (5) All mines are marked IAW the platoon SOP. (6) Trip wires are traced to origin, slack wires are cut, and taut wires are marked IAW the SOP. (7) The footpath is marked IAW the platoon SOP. (8) Once the obstacle has been breached, the breaching fire team leader and the automatic rifleman move to the far side of the obstacle and take up covered and concealed positions with the rifleman and grenadier. The team leader signals to the squad leader when they are in position and ready to support. e. Signals the supporting fire team leader to move his fire team up to and through the breach. f. Ensures the grenadier and rifleman of the supporting fire team remain on the near side of the breach to guide the rest of the platoon. g. Ensures the supporting fire team moves through the breach and takes up covered and concealed positions on the far side. h. Reports to the platoon leader and consolidates as needed. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>*12. The platoon leader leads the assault squad through the breach in the obstacle and positions them beyond the breach to support the movement of the remainder of the platoon or assaults the enemy position covering the obstacle.</p> <p>13. The breach squad widens the breach.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves back through the breach and widens the lanes to the size directed by the platoon leader. b. Marks the boundaries of the lanes. c. Rejoins the platoon. <p>*14. The platoon leader reports the situation to the company commander and directs the base-of-fire element to move up and through the obstacle. The platoon leader leaves guides to direct the company through the breach point.</p> <p>15. The company follows up the success of the platoon as it conducts the breach and continues the assault against the enemy positions.</p> | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1404

Construct an Obstacle

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is executing a mission that requires constructing obstacles. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger force and must provide its own security. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire and CAS capabilities. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon emplaces obstacles in the time specified by the company commander. The placement of obstacles should complement each other. The obstacles should be tied in with the terrain so the platoon can provide massed direct and indirect fires on the enemy. The obstacles disrupt, turn, fix, or hold the enemy force. The obstacles should be covered by direct fire. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders. Collateral damage is limited.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader reconnoiters the terrain in front of the platoon position and develops an obstacle plan. (FM 5-102)<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Analyzes the mission.b. Analyzes the avenues of approach.c. Analyzes engagement area, battle positions, and location of weapons systems.d. Determines possible obstacle locations and types if not directed from higher headquarters.e. Determines obstacle priorities.f. Determines resources available and necessary.g. Determines actual work sequence and time required.h. Determines task organization.i. Determines coordination required.j. Plans for deception with possible phony minefields.* 2. The platoon leader employs obstacles. (See FM 7-8, Chapter 2).<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Ensures obstacles support the tactical plan.b. Ensures obstacles are covered by observation and fire.c. Ensures obstacles tie in with and support the flank units, existing obstacles, and fire plans (indirect and direct).d. Constructs obstacles in depth.e. Employs obstacles for surprise.f. Positions protective obstacles outside hand-grenade range.g. Emplaces obstacles by priority IAW OPORD. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 3. The platoon leader assigns obstacle construction tasks to the squads (by sector or as a task throughout the platoon area). 4. The squads construct the obstacles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organize for construction according to the task organization. b. Construct the obstacles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Hasty protective minefield (2) Triple standard concertina. (3) Knife rest. (4) Abatis. c. Maintain security during construction. d. Camouflage the obstacles. * 5. The platoon leader reports emplacement of minefields and obstacles to higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Submits the intention to emplace the minefields and reports to the company commander. b. Reports initiation to the company commander or higher headquarters. c. Records minefields on DA Form 1355-1-R. The leader retains a copy and forwards a copy to the company commander. d. Includes all obstacles on sector sketches and defensive plans. e. Reports completion of the minefields. 6. The platoon may be required to remove obstacles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recovers mines with the same personnel who emplaced them. b. Disarms and recovers mines, beginning with the row nearest the friendly side. c. Ensures the security force remains with the recovery team until all mines are disarmed and recovered. d. Destroys DA Form 1355-1-R on completion of recovery. * 7. The platoon leader reports the removal of minefields and obstacles to the company commander. * 8. The platoon leader transfers the responsibility of obstacles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures the leader of the gaining unit (as applicable) signs, dates, and accepts DA Form 1355-1-R from the platoon leader being relieved. The platoon reports the transfer. b. Forwards a copy of the signed DA Form 1355-1-R to the company commander. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1408

Conduct Waterborne Operations (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon leader receives an operation order directing the platoon to conduct waterborne operations. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger unit. The platoon must provide its own security. The platoon conducts tactical operations during daylight and darkness. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire available. ROE have been published.

This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon moves to the designated debarkation point and conducts the boat movement according to the time schedule specified in the order. The main body is not surprised by the enemy during the boat movement. The platoon moves all personnel and equipment without loss or damage. The platoon maintains a sufficient fighting force capable of completing the mission and conducting further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader issues a boat movement annex with the OPORD. (See T&EO 71-2-0065.07-3000, Conduct Troop Leading Procedures Infantry Platoon.)<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Ensures subordinate leaders conduct briefbacks on receiving the OPORD and conducting their planning.b. Ensures rehearsals are conducted according to the OPORD.c. Designates movement formations, techniques, and intervals.d. Ensures key personnel and equipment are cross-loaded.* 2. The platoon leader plans for indirect fire support along the river route. (See T&EO 07-3-1200.07-3000, Employ Fire Support Rifle Platoon.)3. The squad leaders inspect the boats, supervise the loading and lashing of equipment, and assign a seat number to each soldier.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Cross-load personnel and equipment according to the OPORD.b. Identify weak swimmers.c. Maintain tactical integrity of elements in each boat.* 4. The platoon leader selects the method of navigation.* 5. The squad leaders act as the coxswain (boat leader) for each boat.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Assign an air guard based on the threat.b. Man at least one automatic weapon or grenade launcher during movement.c. Direct the first paddler on the right to be the observer (alerts the coxswain of obstructions in the water and alerts the navigator of river characteristics).d. Direct the first man on the left to set the stroke to be followed by all paddlers.e. Embark the boat according to the platoon leader's orders or platoon SOP.f. Enforce strict light and noise discipline during movement.g. Avoid obstructions, maintain balance in the boat, and keep the squad alert at all times.h. Steer the boat, using a paddle as a rudder. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 6. The platoon leader knows his location at all times during movement. * 7. The platoon leader maintains control of the platoon at all times. 8. The platoon maintains the proper formation and interval and moves to reduce detection. 9. The platoon reacts to enemy contact as rehearsed. 10. The platoon arrives at the debarkation point at the time designated in the OPORD. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Disembarks IAW the SOP or the coxswain's orders. b. Establishes local security by the lead boat or individual swimmers from the lead boat. c. Secures and camouflages the boats (security team may remain if mission requires). *11. The squad leaders account for personnel and equipment and report the status to the platoon leader and platoon sergeant. 12. The platoon continues the mission. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1409

Maintain Operations Security (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The unit is conducting tactical operations separately or as part of a larger force and is maintaining operations security. The enemy has the capability to detect the unit visually, audibly, and electronically. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The unit prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, and intentions. The unit prevents the enemy from surprising its main body and uses active and passive noise and light discipline. The unit remains combat effective and is prepared for follow-on missions. The unit complies with the ROE/ROI, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. Collateral damage is minimized.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. Leaders protect friendly information by checking or performing the following: Note: The commander ensures that ROI and ROE are disseminated to subordinate units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Prohibit fraternization with civilians (as applicable).b. Makes sure maps do not contain the friendly order of battle.c. Conduct inspections and give briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials (letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs).d. Safeguard weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, classified documents.e. Sanitize all planning areas and positions before departure. <p>2. The unit employs active and passive security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Mans and performs surveillance from an OP.b. Conducts counter-reconnaissance patrols.c. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements.d. Conducts stand-to procedures.e. Establishes local security.f. Establishes specific levels of alert (based on METT-TC).g. Uses camouflage.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Ensures fighting positions are camouflaged using exposed dirt to break the outline of a position. Checks the position from the enemy's point of view.(2) Ensures camouflage nets (if used) are hung properly.(3) Employs overhead camouflage and sites positions and personnel to prevent detection from the air.(4) Keeps personnel and equipment in the shadows, when possible. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (5) Ensures all personnel use camouflage paint to cover exposed skin. (6) Covers all reflective surfaces with non-reflective material, such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick. (7) Avoids crossing near footpaths, trails, and or roads, where possible. (8) Erases tracks leading into the positions. (9) Camouflages equipment using vegetation to break up the outline of the equipment and cover all reflective surfaces. h. Enforces litter discipline. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Collects and back hauls trash during logistics runs, during stationary periods. (2) Carries trash until it can be disposed of securely. i. Uses terrain and vegetation for concealment. j. Controls movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Uses the proper movement formation and movement technique. (2) Moves as fast as the situation permits. (3) Moves along covered and concealed routes. 3. The unit enforces radio discipline. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses the proper radio procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Changes frequencies and call signs IAW unit SOI and/or unit SOP. (2) Uses varied transmission schedules and lengths. (3) Uses established formats to expedite transmissions. (4) Encodes messages or uses secure voice. (5) Uses brevity codes, when possible. (6) Uses the lowest power settings possible. (7) Avoids transmission patterns. (8) Maintains radio silence, as directed. b. Takes action if jamming is suspected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Continues to operate. (2) Disconnects the antenna. (3) Switches to the highest power. (4) Relocates the radio. (5) Uses directional antennas. (6) Turns the squelch off. c. Uses messenger and wire whenever possible, especially in static positions. d. Uses the radio in the quiet-message mode. Transmits an arranged number of taps or uses the PUSH-TO-TALK switch in the same manner. * 4. The unit leadership enforces light discipline. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses a poncho to conceal lights necessary for planning or reading a map. Ensures all flashlights have filters. b. Ensures all personnel remove or tape personal items that may reflect light (identification tags, rings, watches). c. Uses hand grenades and Claymore mines to eliminate exposure of individual positions by weapon muzzle flashes. d. Builds cooking fires or smokes cigarettes, during daylight or darkness, only with permission of a leader. e. Uses only passive night observation equipment (if possible). * 5. The unit leadership enforces noise discipline. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies shortcomings in noise discipline during final inspections. b. Ensures personnel tape down or remove items that make noise. c. Uses normal means of communication to the greatest extent possible. d. Prohibits talking except as required to conduct or plan operations. e. Ensures arm-and-hand signals are used along with night vision devices. f. Considers using a tug line as a means of communication in a static position. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task
07-3-1414
Operate In An Electronic Warfare Environment
Status: Active

Condition: Platoon is experiencing radio frequency interference. Jamming of communications necessitates implementation of electronic warfare. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon recognizes the type of interference. The platoon acts to defeat the effects of jamming interference. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>NOTE: Leaders ensure that rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) are disseminated to subordinate personnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Unit troubleshoots and isolates to determine the nature of the interference. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Detects internal equipment problems by disconnecting antenna. b. Investigates the possibility that interference is caused by nearby equipment, friendly communications, or atmospheric conditions. c. Identifies type of jamming signal, based on type of emission and audio characteristics. 2. Unit recognizes ECM and implements ECCM. 3. Unit uses countermeasures to enable communications to resume. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continues to operate and does not disclose, in the clear, the effectiveness of the Jamming. b. Reduces transmission speed. c. Increases transmitter power. d. Relocates antenna. A directional antenna can be used. e. When directed, changes to alternate frequency. f. Uses alternate means of communications: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Land lines. (2) Courier. 4. Unit takes the following action to defeat imitative electronic devices (IED). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Authenticates, as required by the SOI. b. Avoids acting on improperly authenticated messages. (Message is passed to addressee with the note "Not authenticated" or "Improperly authenticated".) 5. Unit prepares and submits operator interference report (MIJI 1). | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-1501

Conduct Resupply Operations (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon must conduct extended tactical operations while operating separately or as part of a larger force. The platoon must provide its own security when operating separately.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon leader reports personnel, equipment, and supply status IAW the platoon SOP. The platoon mission is not hindered by lack of supplies or ammunition. Maintenance problems with weapons, vehicles, communications, or other equipment do not prevent the platoon from accomplishing its mission. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader anticipates resupply needs and ensures resupply and maintenance requests are submitted early so unit resupply and maintenance do not affect the mission.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Reports equipment status and losses IAW the platoon SOP.b. Reports supply status IAW the platoon SOP.c. Submits reports following the major changes in the status that impair mission accomplishment or IAW the platoon SOP.* 2. The platoon leader plans for sustainment of combat operations (See Conduct Troop Leading Procedures).<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Determines ammunition requirements and other supply needs.b. Determines the transportation needed to support the operation then requests it.* 3. The platoon sergeant ensures required basic load, supplies, and platoon operational equipment are on hand.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Consolidates requests from section/squad leaders.b. Submits ammunition and resupply requests early for resupply.c. Supervises ammunition stockage, when used.d. Coordinates with the 1SG, supply sergeant, and XO for support.e. Distributes supplies according to the plan.f. Requests fortification materials, as appropriate, for obstacle construction during defensive operations.* 4. The leaders submit resupply requests.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Request resupply based on actual losses and expenditures, and forecasted requirements.b. Request enough replacement personnel, water, rations, lubricants, ammunition, and repair parts to meet expected needs until the next resupply.c. Submit requests soon enough so as not to impair current or future operations.d. Make requests to the company XO or first sergeant using line numbers to save time. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Ensure requests are encoded when operating radios on a nonsecure net. 5. The platoon coordinates resupply. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performs resupply as quickly as possible in covered and concealed positions. b. Distributes supplies throughout the platoon, based on current and anticipated operations and needs. c. Uses supplies that have been stocked at firing positions first. d. Uses one of three resupply techniques (in-position, service station, or pre-position) based on METT-TC. e. Prepares a resupply point, when appropriate, according to resupply transport. f. Ensures security is maintained during resupply operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Mans crew-served weapons and OPs continuously. (2) Prepares to respond in case the enemy attacks. g. Uses backhauling to remove casualties, damaged equipment, excess ammunition, and other items. 6. The platoon conducts aerial resupply. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts a reconnaissance of the selected LZ or DZ to confirm that it meets the factors of METT-TC and aircraft size requirements IAW company SOP. b. Organizes the platoon to receive aerial resupply. c. Designates a security element. d. Designates a recovery and distribution element. e. Secures the LZ (security element). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Searches the area to ensure it is free of the enemy. (2) Establishes mutually supporting positions that provide observation, cover, concealment, fields of fire, and cover the most likely mounted and dismounted avenues of approach to the LZ or DZ. (3) Makes certain the positions are far enough out to provide early warning of enemy actions. (4) Employs hasty obstacles, as required (for example, Claymore mines, roadblocks). f. Identifies the operational area to the section/squad leader in charge of the recovery and distribution element. g. Identifies the load impact or aircraft landing point. h. Identifies a distribution point for supplies. i. Prepares the LZ or DZ (recovery and distribution section/squad), once the security element has secured the LZ or DZ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Removes the obstacles, if possible, and marks the obstacles it cannot remove. (2) Removes debris that may interfere with the resupply aircraft. (3) Marks the load impact area or aircraft landing point in a manner identified by the platoon leader (for example, smoke, lights, VS 17 panels, field-expedient markers). (4) Divides the air-dropped load (if required) and moves it to the distribution point. (5) Unloads the aircraft, divides the load (if required), and moves it to the distribution point. (6) Conceals the LZ or DZ by removing any indication of its use, such as aircraft tracks, and recover markers, equipment, and any other items that may identify its use for resupply. j. Controls (platoon sergeant) the break down of supplies IAW the allocation plan at the distribution point. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Supplies are distributed tactically to individuals. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>(2) Security is maintained throughout the operation.</p> <p>k. Continues the mission.</p> <p>7. The platoon performs wheeled vehicle resupply.</p> <p>a. Selects a covered and concealed unloading site, with suitable routes leading in and out of the site.</p> <p>b. Resupplies without restricting its security, communications, movement, delivery of direct fire, or ability to provide indirect fire support.</p> <p>8. The platoon plans and conducts tactical feeding.</p> <p>a. Maintains local security, noise and light discipline, and concealment IAW T&EO Maintain Operations Security.</p> <p>b. Burns or buries garbage, waste, and trash; or carries it when other means of disposal are not appropriate.</p> <p>9. The platoon performs maintenance functions.</p> <p>a. Follows the company maintenance SOP. (1) Maintains weapons and other equipment IAW related TM. (2) Performs maintenance during specified maintenance periods.</p> <p>b. Inspects and supervises (leaders) the maintenance performed by their subordinates.</p> <p>c. Establishes priority for cleaning and maintenance of weapons, then radios based on the situation. Weapons priority will normally be antiarmor, crew-served, and individual.</p> <p>d. Turns in damaged communications equipment to company communications chief.</p> <p>e. Turns in weapons and other equipment to the company supply sergeant during resupply operations, or platoon or company collection points during combat.</p> <p>f. Performs emergency repairs as far forward as possible to ensure continued operation and availability of equipment.</p> <p>g. (XO and 1SG) Coordinate and supervise maintenance support.</p> <p>(1) Evacuates damaged weapons to the battalion trains.</p> <p>(2) Arrange for float for higher echelon support.</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader submits requests for transportation support to company CP.</p> <p>a. Transports rucksacks and excess equipment by vehicles whenever possible.</p> <p>11. The platoon performs personnel service support functions.</p> <p>a. (Leaders) Uses battle rosters to keep up-to-date records of their personnel.</p> <p>b. Reports unit strength on a secure net or landline from the platoon battle roster.</p> <p>c. (Platoon sergeant) Coordinates services for the platoon to include mail, finance, awards, religious activities, legal assistance, and rest and recuperation (R&R).</p> <p>d. Reports casualties IAW platoon SOP.</p> <p>e. Handles EPWs and captured equipment IAW T&EO, Process Enemy Prisoners Of War/Captured Materiel Infantry Platoon.</p> <p>f. Integrates new replacements in the platoon.</p> <p>12. The platoon performs health services support functions.</p> <p>a. Performs casualty prevention measures.</p> <p>(1) Establishes and implements sleep plans.</p> <p>(2) Counters the effect of stress and continuous operations.</p> <p>(3) Ensures uniform are consistent with the weather conditions and the mission.</p> <p>(4) Considers soldier's load and vehicular means to transport rucksacks and excess equipment.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (5) Aidman must routinely check the physical well-being of the soldiers. (6) Soldier must conduct personal hygiene. (7) Soldiers must attempt to bathe and change undergarments every 48 hours to avoid rashes, if continuously wearing chemical protective overgarments. b. Performs field sanitation operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Leaders ensure the soldiers follow field sanitation procedures. (2) The platoon organizes a platoon field sanitation team IAW AR 40-5. (3) Soldiers drink only potable water as identified by the field sanitation team. (4) The platoon maintains its prescribed load of water purification materials IAW the platoon SOP. (5) The platoon purifies potable water by using iodine tablets or by boiling (IAW FM 21-10). (6) The platoon builds latrines and urinals at least 100 feet from water sources and 100 meters from mess areas. Hand-washing facilities are provided with a soakage pit beneath. (7) The platoon protects all food from extreme temperatures, moisture, and pests. (8) The platoon cleans and disinfects mess kits before and after use. (9) The platoon takes measures to reduce exposure to insects and rodents. (10) Personnel wash hands before eating or preparing food. c. Performs treatment and evacuation of casualties IAW T&EO Treat And Evacuate Casualties Infantry Platoon. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-2107

Conduct Overwatch/Support by Fire (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The Platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company or battalion task force. The platoon is supporting maneuver. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon detects all enemy armor in its sector. The platoon does not allow the enemy to flank the main body. The platoon destroys 90 percent of enemy armor in its sector. The platoon sustains no more than 20 percent casualties and no more than 20 percent vehicle losses. The section sustains no more than 10 percent casualties and no vehicle losses. The platoon causes no losses in the supported unit or other friendly units.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. Platoon leader receives and analyzes the FRAGO/OPORD for the overwatch/SBF mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Identifies/designates tentative overwatch/SBF positions, TRPs, sectors of fire, rifle company or company team objective, moving element routes, and/or orientation on likely enemy positions.b. Identifies covered and concealed routes to be used during movement to overwatch/SBF positions. <p>2. Platoon conducts tactical movement and/or occupies overwatch/SBF positions to support moving element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Maintains orientation on and overwatch of the supported element's battle space during movement.b. Adjusts movement to maintain correct interval from the supported element based on the terrain and the ability of the platoon's weapon systems to cover supported element's battle space.c. Informs moving element to slow/alter movement so it does not exceed the overwatch/SBF element's ability to provide direct/indirect fire support.d. If necessary, makes a short halt on key terrain that affords more effective overwatch for the supported element.e. If appropriate, conducts hasty occupation of overwatch/SBF position that provides effective weapon standoff, cover and concealment for dismounted infantrymen or hull-down or turret-down positions, and/or orientation on likely enemy positions. <p>3. Platoon conducts overwatch from a stationary position as the situation dictates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Begins scanning sectors of fire as designated by the platoon leader or SOP.b. Keeps supported element informed of the enemy situation and of any lapses in overwatch coverage. <p>4. If support by fire becomes necessary, platoon initiates suppressive fires, either when the platoon leader issues a platoon fire command or when dismounted infantrymen, squads, or vehicles fire after observing an enemy element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. If necessary, occupies hull-down firing positions (BFV).b. Uses appropriate weapon system to destroy targets and suppress dismounted troops and suspected enemy locations.c. Calls for an adjusts indirect fires onto the enemy elements. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Adjusts fires as necessary to prevent fratricide based on the supported unit's movement/signals. e. Moves to alternate positions as necessary to avoid becoming decisively engaged and/or to maintain effective fires on the enemy. f. Maintains situational awareness of friendly and enemy unit locations through visual contact and radio cross-talk. <p>5. Platoon moves to rejoin the rifle company or company team when overwatch/SBF is completed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts tactical movement to the appropriate platoon location. b. Assumes designated position within the rifle company or company team formation/position. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-4008

Conduct Surveillance from an Observation Post (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is tasked to occupy observation posts as part of an operation. The platoon must provide its own security. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger force. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield. ROE has been published.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon establishes the OPs, undetected by the enemy. The platoon maintains sustained operation of the OPs and warns the main body before the enemy can engage it with direct fire. The platoon gathers all intelligence requirements specified in the order. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The platoon leader plans for the OP sites.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Based on the commander's guidance determines if the OPs will be short-duration (12 hours or less) or long-duration (more than 12 hours).b. Determines how many OPs are needed based on the avenues of approach/NAIs the platoon must cover in the area of operations.c. If time is available, conducts reconnaissance of the sector to confirm avenues of approach and suitability of possible OP locations.d. Designates sections/teams to occupy and man OPs. <p>2. Designated elements move to occupy OPs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Conducts movement to the general location of the OP site.b. Establishes local security.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Positions BFVs and/or infantry squads to provide overwatch of the general OP site and any dominant terrain that could influence the OP.(2) Reports "SET" to the platoon/section leader when vehicles and/or dismounted elements can initially observe the sector, avenue of approach or NAI. <p>NOTE: A minimum of two personnel should man a dismounted OP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">c. Section/squad leader selects OP site(s).<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Moves forward with designated personnel to reconnoiter general OP sites, checking the sites for mines, booby traps, and enemy personnel.(2) Ensures sites provide unobstructed observation of the designated area.(3) Ensures natural surroundings provide cover and concealment of the OP and the routes going to and from the OP.(4) Ensures the OP is within small arms range of the BFVs and other dismounted positions.(5) Overlapping observation of the designated area by adjacent OPs.(6) Ensures OP does not skyline observers.d. Selects fighting positions for infantry squads. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Selects fighting and hide positions for vehicles. f. Moves vehicles into fighting positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Crews mark vehicle positions. (2) BCs and gunners complete and check range cards and sector sketches. g. Move vehicles back into hide positions after range cards and sector sketches are completed. <p>* 3. Platoon/Section leader briefs OP personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviews the unit's mission. b. Orients the OPs by relating mission graphics to the terrain (TRPs, trigger point, break point). c. Specifies primary/secondary avenues of approach. d. Specifies primary and alternate means of communication as well as call signs, frequencies, challenge and password, and running password. e. Specifies covered and concealed routes to and from OPs. f. Specifies actions on contact and displacement criteria of the OPs. g. Specifies relief time of OP personnel. <p>NOTE: Depending on the size of the OP, rotations should be made every 20 - 30 minutes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Ensures each soldier has a prepared position to return to. <p>4. OP personnel assemble required materials/equipment needed for the OP sites and ensures they are complete and/or serviceable. Materials and equipment include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Map with graphics. b. Compass. c. Proper communications equipment (wire, FM, visual). d. Observation devices (binoculars and night vision devices). e. SOI extract. f. Weapons (including personal, crew-served, light antitank, and mines, as necessary). g. All required personal equipment (kevlar helmet, LBE, weapons, mask). h. Necessary materials/equipment as designated in the OPORD/FRAGO. <p>5. Occupation of OP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Move to OPs using covered and concealed routes. b. Conducts hasty occupation of OP. c. Reports to platoon leader when set. d. Conduct the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Conducts surveillance and reports enemy activity IAW unit SOP or as directed by the platoon leader. (2) Prepares range card. (3) Makes communications checks IAW unit SOP or as directed by the platoon leader. (4) Briefs relieving soldiers on special instructions or changes before departing OP. e. Designated elements conduct patrols between OP. <p>6. As time permits, sections/squads continue to improve vehicle/OP sites and fighting positions throughout occupation period.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Develop a complete sector sketch or map including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) A rough sketch of key and significant terrain. (2) Location of primary, alternate, and supplementary dismounted positions. (3) Location of the OP. (4) Location of vehicle fighting and hide positions. (5) Alternate hide, fighting, and OP positions. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (6) Routes to the OP and fighting positions. (7) Sectors of observation. (8) TRPs for direct and indirect fire weapons. (9) Prepared calls for fire (based on trigger lines and projected locations where the enemy might be observed). b. Conducts patrols between OPs as directed by the platoon leader. c. Dig in to enhance cover and concealment. d. Camouflage OP and vehicle positions. e. Employ hasty protective obstacles (mines, wire, trip flares). f. Reconnoiter routes to alternate and supplementary positions. g. Perform maintenance. h. Ensure MOPP suits and protective masks are available. i. Emplace M8A1 chemical agent alarms. * 7. Section/squad leader inspects OP sites and fighting positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures OPs and squad positions are camouflaged and afford adequate cover and concealment (including overhead cover for dismounted OPs). b. Ensures OP personnel are alert and maintain situational awareness. c. Ensures required equipment is on-hand/serviceable. d. Checks range cards/sector sketches for accuracy. * 8. Leaders keep higher elements informed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Section/squad leader reports "ESTABLISHED" to the platoon/section leader when security measures are completed and coordination with adjacent OPs has been accomplished. b. Platoon leader reports exact location of each OP to the company commander when all OPs have reported established. 9. OP personnel observe the platoon sector IAW unit SOP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintain constant surveillance of sector, avenues of approach, and/or NAls. b. Maintain local security as necessary. c. Send reports IAW unit SOP to the platoon leader. d. Identify enemy forces entering sector along designated avenues of approach. e. Accurately report enemy activity to platoon leader. f. Platoon leader reports OP information on enemy activity to the company commander. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-4141

Clear Built-up Area/Building (Infantry/Mech Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: While conducting tactical operations in a MOUT environment, either independently or as part of a company team, the platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to clear a built-up area. Indirect fires and artillery assets may be available to the platoon. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon organizes to clear the built-up area. The breach element enters and secures a foothold within the building. The assault element clears each building to protect the main body from enemy fires. The support element isolates the building and overwatches the breach and assault elements as specified in the platoon OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon destroys enemy forces or causes them to withdraw from the built-up area. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The platoon leader plans for clearance of the designated building.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Evaluates the situation, including the following factors:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Building types (including layout and construction materials).(2) Subterranean entry and exit points and avenues of approach.(3) Requirements for special equipment and/or materials.b. Task organizes the platoon:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Designates the support element.(2) Designates the breach element.(3) Designates the assault element.c. Designates entry point and foothold location for the breach element.d. Designates fire control measures for the support element.e. Designates fire and graphic control measures for the assault element.f. Defines and/or clarifies ROE.g. Establishes limits of advance, right/left limits, and phase lines.h. Designates building numbers (for control/identification purposes). <p>2. The platoon leader employs the support element and indirect fires to isolate the building and overwatch the breach and assault elements during movement to the objective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Employs BFVs in SBF positions to destroy or suppress any known enemy positions.b. Employs indirect fires and/or smoke to suppress, obscure, or destroy enemy elements.c. Employs BFVs to observe identified subterranean entry/exit points.d. Employs BFVs to breach walls and/or obstacles (if required). <p>3. Breach element conducts tactical movement from dismount point to the objective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Initiates movement after enemy defensive positions are suppressed, obscured, or destroyed.b. Uses covered and concealed routes that do not mask friendly suppressive fires. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Crosses open areas rapidly using concealment of smoke and suppression of enemy targets by the support element. 4. Assault element conducts tactical movement from the dismount point to the objective IAW paragraph 3 above. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Trails the breach element IAW METT-T. b. Provides additional security and/or support (if needed) to the breach element. * 5. Platoon leader/PSG employs the support element and indirect fires to overwatch and protect the breach and assault elements during the clearance of the building. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. BFVs move as directed or as METT-T dictates to support the breach and support elements as they enter and begin clearing operations. b. Engages enemy forces with appropriate weapon systems to destroy or force withdrawal of sniper teams, ATGM teams, and armor vehicles within sector. c. Maintains 360-degree security. d. Monitors/controls the flow of battle to prevent potential fratricide situations. 6. Breach element enters the building. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enters the building at the designated entry point. b. Secures and maintains a foothold for the assault element. c. Provides additional support for the assault element. 7. Assault element enters and clears the building. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Clears the building/rooms IAW Battle Drill 7-4-D309. b. Marks the building to show that it has been cleared. c. Reports clearance to the platoon leader. d. Continues operations IAW platoon leader's intent. * 8. Platoon leader keeps the company commander informed throughout the operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sends updated SITREPs as necessary during the operation. b. Reports the completion of clearance of the building. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-4142

Prepare Platoon Sector Sketch

Status: Active

Condition: While conducting tactical operations the platoon is ordered to defend a BP, specific sector, or strongpoint as part of a larger unit. It has an OPORD/FRAGO with overlay and graphic control measures. Enemy contact is possible. ROE is published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: All vehicles and crew served weapons (AT, MG) complete a range card and squad leaders complete a sector sketch. The platoon leader develops the platoon fire plan using vehicle, squad sector sketches. The fire plan and accompanying overlays include all critical tactical information and control measures. The platoon complies with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The platoon occupies fighting positions.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. BCs/squad leaders position BFVs/squads in their fighting positions.b. BCs/squad leaders assigns gunners/squads a sector of fire based on guidance of the platoon leader.c. Marks the vehicle positions (drivers, with the assistance of designated infantry personnel.<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) Centers a stake on driver's front periscope.(2) Centers a stake on the hub of the front and rear road wheels on the driver's side. <p>NOTE: Crews must ensure the stakes do not interfere with vehicle movement into and out of the fighting position.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">d. BCs/squad leaders, if time permits, walks engagement area to identify dead space in each teams sector. 2. Platoon leader conducts command and control of operations digitally.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Maintain digital situational awareness.b. Submit digital reports and overlays.c. Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally. 3. Gunners/squads complete range cards based on the BCs/squad leader's guidance.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Uses correct primary weapons symbol.b. Identifies primary and secondary sectors of fires.c. Identifies overlapping sectors of fire.d. Identifies TRPs. These considerations apply:<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) The symbol for TRPs is a "plus" sign, with a letter/number designator in the upper right quadrant of the symbol as assigned by the FSO.(2) Ensures their crews/squads know where all TRPs are in their sector of responsibility.e. Identify dead space.f. Identify maximum engagement lines (MEL) for all weapon systems. <p>NOTE: When terrain restricts vehicle weapon systems, BCs must adjust MELs to conform to the terrain.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>g. Identify weapon reference points using a line with a series of arrows extending from a known terrain feature and pointing in the direction of the BFV/squad.</p> <p>NOTE: When the weapon reference point cannot be drawn precisely on the range card because of vehicle location, it is drawn to the left or right nearest the actual direction.</p> <p>h. Indicate BFV/fighting position locations using 6-digit grid.</p> <p>i. Enter complete marginal data.</p> <p>j. Complete data section.</p> <p>k. Complete the remarks block, including any required information for weapon reference points.</p> <p>l. Make two copies of the range card, retaining one and sending the other to the platoon/section/squad leader.</p> <p>m. Use the same process to prepare range cards for alternate and supplementary positions.</p> <p>* 4. Section/squad leaders review range cards, make necessary tactical adjustments, and develop section/squad sector sketches.</p> <p>a. Check each range card and sector sketch for problems/errors and make adjustments/corrections as needed.</p> <p>(1) Ensure coverage of dead space, using mines if necessary.</p> <p>(2) Coordinate indirect fires through the platoon leader.</p> <p>b. Coordinates with adjacent units on flanks.</p> <p>c. Identify the main terrain features in the sector and determine the range to each.</p> <p>d. Identify primary positions for team vehicles.</p> <p>e. Draw sectors of fire for each vehicle/squad.</p> <p>(1) Identify primary positions for BFVs and fighting positions.</p> <p>(2) Identify engagement areas, including machine gun FPLs or PDF.</p> <p>f. Identify and plot TRPs in sector for the following:</p> <p>(1) Direct fire weapons.</p> <p>(2) Indirect fire weapons.</p> <p>g. Identify locations for primary and successive positions.</p> <p>h. Plot all dead space.</p> <p>i. Identify obstacle locations and types.</p> <p>j. Specify FPF, if allocated.</p> <p>k. Plot MELs for all weapons systems.</p> <p>l. Ensure sector sketches are drawn as close to scale as possible.</p> <p>m. Enter complete legend/matrix information.</p> <p>(1) Legend information includes the following:</p> <p>(a) Magnetic north.</p> <p>(b) Element identification.</p> <p>(c) Platoon identification.</p> <p>(d) Company team identification.</p> <p>(e) DTG the sector sketch was completed.</p> <p>(2) Matrix information (to explain and assign target priorities) includes the following:</p> <p>(a) Indirect fires (by BFV or squad).</p> <p>(b) Direct fires.</p> <p>(c) Obstacles (responsibility by vehicle and infantry position).</p> <p>n. Make two copies; retaining one and submitting the other to the platoon leader within the required time limit specified in the OPORD/FRAGO/unit SOP.</p> <p>* 5. Platoon leader develops platoon fire plan using section/squad sector sketches.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checks each range card and/or section/squad sector sketch for completeness and problems/errors and makes adjustments/corrections as needed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Covers dead space using the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Mines. (b) PEWS. (c) Active patrols. (d) Indirect fires. (2) Refines indirect fire plan through FSO. b. Identifies primary and secondary sectors of fires and/or the engagement area. c. As applicable, identifies primary, alternate, supplementary, and/or successive BPs and fighting positions. d. Identifies OP locations. e. Identifies remount points for OPs and infantry squads. f. Identifies M240, Javelin, Dragon (if applicable), positions with primary sectors of fire and FPLs/PDFs. g. Identifies the MELs for all weapons. h. Identifies TRPs for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Direct fire. (2) Indirect fire, with FPF locations (if applicable). i. Identifies mines and obstacles in sector. j. Identifies flanking units, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Positions. (2) Sectors. k. Identifies priority of engagement by bumper number, including target list for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Direct fire. (2) Indirect fire. l. Checks the plan for accuracy and completeness and sends a copy to the company commander within the time limit specified in the OPORD/FRAGO/unit SOP. m. Distributes one copy to each BC/squad leader. n. Uses the same process to prepare fire plans for alternate and successive BPs. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-4146

Cross NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: While conducting tactical operations as part of a larger unit, the unit was directed by the commander to cross an NBC contaminated area. The type of agent employed is not known (chemical/biological), or the commander has specified the operational exposure guidance (OEG). The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The unit takes appropriate measures to prepare for movement. It enters, moves through, and exits the contaminated area along the specified route. The unit monitors and reports dosage and radiacmeter readings as directed in the OEG and sustains no NBC-related casualties. It reports the presence of any type of NBC contamination to the commander. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Conducts command and control of operations digitally:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Maintain digital situational awareness.(2) Submit digital reports and overlays.(3) Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally.b. Ensures that rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) are disseminated to subordinate personnel. <p>2. Unit prepares to cross a radiologically contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Takes actions to provide extra shielding (such as using wet sandbags on the vehicle floor).b. Stows externally carried equipment inside vehicles or covers it with tarps, plastic sheeting, or similar materials.c. Checks radiac instruments to ensure IM-93s are zeroed or DT-236s Radiac Detector are preset.d. Assumes MOPP 4 at least 500 meters from an identified contaminated area.e. Closes and secures vehicle hatches if METT-TC permits.f. If applicable, activates NBC overpressurization systems if in the closed hatch configuration. <p>3. Unit prepares to cross a chemically or biologically contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Stows externally carried equipment inside vehicles or covers it with tarps, plastic sheeting, or similar materials.b. Halts and assumes MOPP 4 at least 500 meters from an identified contaminated area.c. Attaches M8/M9 paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of chemical contamination.d. Secures M8A1 alarms to vehicles IAW unit SOP. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Closes and secures vehicle hatches if METT-TC permits. f. If applicable, activates NBC overpressurization systems if in closed hatch configuration. <p>4. Unit crosses the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts movement along route designated route by the commander. b. Avoids stirring up dust, if possible. c. Slows column speed if mounted. d. Increases interval and lateral dispersion between squads, personnel and vehicles as METT-TC permits. e. Avoids puddles, overhanging branches, and brush. f. If applicable, monitors radiac instruments for radiation exposure and reports OEG information to the company commander IAW unit SOP. g. If applicable, monitors M8A1 Chemical Agent alarms/M22 Automatic Chemical Agent Detector Alarms (ACADA) and M9 paper. h. If applicable, marks contaminated area. i. Sustains no NBC-related casualties. <p>5. Unit exits the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports exit of the contaminated area to the commander. b. Moves at least 500 meters from the area before halting. c. Controls the actions of the sections/squads as they exit. d. Submits NBC-1 report with radiation and/or chemical/biological data. e. Administers first aid to all casualties within five minutes of halt. f. If NBC monitoring results are negative, initiates unmasking procedures IAW OPORD/FRAGO/unit SOP. g. If applicable, zeroes IM-93s and/or resets DT-236s. h. Conducts coordination for operational decontamination, as applicable. i. Performs an operational and/or a thorough decontamination, if the situation permits. <p>6. The unit continues to monitor the NBC detection devices.</p> | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

07-3-4607

Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon has assaulted and seized an objective or driven back an enemy attack on its position. The platoon is operating separately or as part of a larger unit and must provide its own security. Enemy forces have withdrawn to hasty defensive positions, but have the capability to counterattack. Remaining enemy forces on the objective are scattered and disorganized. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. The enemy can attack with a company. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international media may be present in the area.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: All remaining enemy resistance is destroyed or captured. The platoon establishes security and prevents surprise of the main body within three minutes of receiving the leader's order to consolidate. Consolidation and reorganization are completed within 15 minutes, and the platoon is prepared to continue operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| 1. To consolidate, the platoon leader positions or repositions the OP forward to provide security. <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Ensures members are alert for a possible counterattack.b. Ensures the platoon main body is not engaged without warning. | | |
| 2. The platoon occupies or reoccupies hasty fighting positions near the objective and establishes all-round security. <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Evaluates terrain thoroughly.b. Positions the squads using the clock or the terrain feature technique. | | |
| 3. The leaders adjust positions and position crew-served weapons to cover likely avenues of approach and ensure mutual support between squads and adjacent units. | | |
| 4. The platoon searches the area to ensure it is free of the enemy. | | |
| 5. The platoon leader assigns or reassigns all squads temporary sectors of fire. | | |
| 6. The platoon prepares, replaces, or repairs fighting positions and obstacles, as needed. | | |
| 7. The platoon leader reorganizes and reestablishes the chain of command by filling key leader positions. | | |
| 8. The platoon leader reestablishes communication nets. | | |
| 9. The platoon mans key weapons, as required by METT-TC. | | |
| 10. The leaders supervise redistribution of ammunition and equipment. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 11. The squad leaders provide ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) reports to the platoon leader. 12. The platoon sergeant coordinates resupply and supervises the evacuation of casualties and EPW plan. 13. The platoon leader consolidates the ACE reports and provides a platoon ACE report to the company commander. 14. The platoon leader collects and disseminates information about the completed operation to squad leaders and reports any intelligence information of immediate value to the company commander. 15. The platoon clears the objective of casualties and EPWs. 16. In the defense, the platoon makes repairs and other adjustments to their perimeter after repelling enemy attacks. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Repairs damaged obstacles and replaces mines and booby traps. b. Relocates selected weapons to alternate positions if leaders believe the enemy may have pinpointed them during the attack. c. Adjusts other positions to maintain mutual support. d. Reoccupies and repairs and improves positions, and prepares for renewed enemy attack. e. Quickly reestablishes OPs and resumes patrolling as directed. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

08-2-0003.07-3104

Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is in continuous operation in a tactical environment and is operating separately or as part of the company. The platoon has sustained casualties. The platoon has an aidman attached and at least one combat lifesaver for each section/squad. The unit has guidance provided by the Rules of Engagement (ROE) and from Mission Instructions such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and Rules of Interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield.
Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon provides or assists in medical treatment and evacuation of casualties.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">The unit performs medical treatment.<ol style="list-style-type: none">Identifies serious casualties requiring evacuation.Administers first aid to casualties.Stabilizes the casualties.Administers the proper lifesaving measures.The combat lifesaver supports medical treatment of casualties on completion of the combat mission.<ol style="list-style-type: none">Provides initial treatment until medical personnel can treat casualties.Separates killed in action (KIAs), litter urgent, and litter priority.Platoon leader conducts command and control of operations digitally.<ol style="list-style-type: none">Maintain digital situational awareness.Submit digital reports and overlays.Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally.The unit reports the casualties as the tactical situation permits.<ol style="list-style-type: none">Reports as soon as time permits. <p>NOTE: Use FBCB2 to request assistance from the BN/TF aid station.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Completes DD Form 1380 (US Field Medical Card), which includes initial diagnosis and medication given.Completes DA Form 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report) for killed or wounded personnel.Completes DA Form 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual) for captured or missing personnel. <ol style="list-style-type: none">The unit evacuates casualties to the unit casualty collection point.<ol style="list-style-type: none">Extracts casualties from danger without further injury.Uses one- and two-man carries and litters.Retains classified documents (SOI, maps, orders, overlays) and mission-essential equipment (night vision devices, crew-served weapon) previously controlled by the casualty.The unit evacuates the casualties to the company casualty collection point.<ol style="list-style-type: none">Positions casualties on vehicle(s), if available.Uses instructions in the OPORD or unit SOP. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>7. The unit requests helicopter evacuation of casualties based on the tactical situation.</p> <p>NOTE: Battalion recon/scout units operating forward of friendly forces will most likely have to utilize aerial evacuation procedures for casualties requiring evacuation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Submits a nine-line medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) request. b. Selects and marks the best available covered and concealed LZ. c. Moves casualties by the best available means to the LZ and continues treatment. d. Assists the flight or ambulance crew with the casualties. e. Maintains security of the LZ to include coordinating any suppressive fires required. <p>8. The unit evacuates contaminated casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiates decontamination before loading. b. Covers casualties if decontamination is impossible to lessen the spread of contamination en route. c. Ensures casualties are not evacuated to an uncontaminated facility or with uncontaminated casualties. d. Decontaminates vehicles and equipment as soon as possible. <p>9. The unit evacuates EPW casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evacuates by the same standards as US casualties. b. Maintains security of EPW casualties. c. Searches EPWs for weapons and ordnance before evacuation. d. Prevents EPWs from having access to weapons during evacuation. <p>10. The unit evacuates the KIA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves to company collection point when the situation permits. b. Transports separately from wounded, if possible. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

17-3-0214.07-1004

Conduct Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: While conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team, the platoon receives an operation order/fragmentary order (OPORD/FRAGO) directing it to coordinate and assist in a passage of lines. The platoon is the stationary unit of the passage. The order includes a map and overlays with graphic control measures. It identifies the passing unit and specifies the time by which the passage must be completed. The passing unit is to perform either a forward or rearward passage of lines. Enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon and the passing unit exchange and coordinate all required information, and the platoon leader reports results of the coordination to the commander and/or the platoon. The platoon assists the passing unit as it moves through the passage lane with no compromise of security. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of friendly fire.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. Platoon leader/platoon sergeant (PSG) conducts troop-leading procedures.* 2. Platoon leader/PSG coordinates for passage.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Issues warning order (WARNO) to platoon.b. Verifies the enemy situation.c. Verifies obstacle types and locations.d. Verifies passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).e. Checks call signs and frequencies of passing unit.f. Checks and/or designates visual recognition signals (far and near).g. Checks and/or designates fire coordination measures.h. Checks command relationship with passing unit.i. Confirms actions to take place following coordination of the passage.* 3. If face-to-face coordination is required, platoon leader/PSG conducts linkup with the passing unit.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Occupies designated contact point.b. Establishes communications with the passing unit while it is outside the effective range of the platoon's direct fire weapons.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Authenticates correctly (if required).(2) Informs the passing unit of number and type of platoon vehicles, direction of weapons orientation, and location of dismounts on the ground.(3) Requests information from the passing unit on number and type of passing unit vehicles and direction from which the unit is traveling.(4) If necessary, requests assistance from the passing unit to provide additional security at contact point.(5) Confirms short-range recognition signal (hand-and-arm, flags, VS-17, flashlight, or pyrotechnics).* 4. If required, platoon leader/PSG conducts coordination with the passing unit.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Exchanges/coordinates the following information with the passing unit:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Signal operating instructions (SOI) information. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Passing unit designation. (3) Number/type of vehicles involved in the passage. (4) Estimated time of arrival of vehicles and markings of the first and last vehicles. (5) Recognition signals. (6) Updated enemy situation. (7) Update human intelligence (HUMINT) on local population, as needed. b. Provides the passing unit with the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Friendly situation/disposition. (2) Terrain analysis. (3) Supporting fires information, to include available assets, smoke data, and target numbers/locations. (4) Locations of friendly obstacles and applicable breaching information, to include any routes through obstacles. (5) SOI information. (6) Command post (CP) location. (7) Contact points (primary, alternate). (8) Passage lane data, to include alternate routes, start point (SP), release point (RP), passage points, and checkpoints. (9) Location and number of guides and number/type of vehicles. (10) Time of passage. (11) Rally points and assembly areas. c. Ensures that both passing and stationary units verify the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Line of departure (LD). (2) Battle handover line (BHL) and time the transfer of responsibility for the control of the sector will take place. (3) Combat service support (CSS) information, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Resupply of Classes III and V (b) Medical evacuation assets. (c) Handling of enemy prisoners of war (EPW). (d) Maintenance requirements and available assets. (4) Actions on contact if enemy is encountered during the passage. <p>* 5. Platoon leader designates guide personnel and briefs guides and other platoon personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies enemy situation. b. Identifies and designates attack positions or assembly areas. c. Identifies and designates RP, start point (SP), and passage lanes. d. Identifies and designates contact points, if necessary. e. Identifies and designates recognition signals f. Specifies appropriate SOI information. <p>6. Guide personnel and vehicles move to appropriate positions and begin activities to support the passage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establish contact points and/or passage points as directed by platoon leader or higher headquarters. b. Establish overwatch positions. c. Reconnoiter and mark route for the passing unit. <p>7. Guide personnel open passage lane.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensure lane provides adequate maneuver space for all passing unit vehicles. b. Assume positions to provide all-around defense for the passage. <p>8. Guide personnel perform linkup with the passing unit and brief unit leaders as necessary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Execute near and far recognition signals. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Verify restrictive fire line (RFL) and BHL as necessary. 9. Platoon guides the passing unit and completes passage of lines actions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs the passing unit along specified routes to designated location(s) beyond the passage lane. b. Overwatches the passage and provides security as needed. c. Reports completion of the passage to the commander. d. Closes passage lane and any lanes through obstacles as required. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

19-3-3105.07-A255

Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Company/Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: Enemy equipment and documents have been captured. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The element processes all captured documents and equipment based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters. The unit complies with the ROE/ROI, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The element tags all captured documents and equipment.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Annotates type of document or equipment (for example, maps, photos, rifles, or radios).b. Annotates date and time of capture.c. Annotates place of capture (grid coordinates).d. Annotates capturing unit.e. Annotates circumstances of capture.f. Annotates prisoner's name (if taken from EPW).* 2. The element leader reports capture of documents or equipment to higher headquarters.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Reports type of document or equipment.b. Reports date and time of capture.c. Reports capturing unit.d. Reports place of capture (grid coordinates).* 3. The element leader disposes of documents and equipment according to guidance from higher headquarters and ROE/ROI.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Destroys, secures, evacuates, or abandons the equipment.b. Evacuates documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

19-3-3106.07-A256

Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Company/Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: Enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates EPW IAW unit SOP and the 5 Ss and T (search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag). The unit complies with the ROI/ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The company XO or 1SG designates an EPW collection point based on the mission and commander's intent.</p> <p>Note: Personnel handling EPWs must be briefed on and understand ROI and ROE.</p> <p>2. Conduct command and control of operations digitally.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Maintain digital situation awareness.b. Submit digital reports.c. Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally. <p>3. The element searches EPW.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Removes all weapons and documents with intelligence value.b. Returns personal items of no military intelligence value such as protective clothing and equipment.c. Gives prisoners receipts for personal property taken. <p>4. The element segregates EPW.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Segregates EPW by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, nationality, and ideology when possible.b. Turns wounded EPW over to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels.c. Restricts enemy prisoners from areas where they can obtain information about the element's mission, strength, and future operations. <p>5. The element silences EPW.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Prevents EPW leaders from giving orders.b. Prevents EPW from planning escape.c. Does not talk in front of EPW except to issue orders and maintain discipline. <p>6. The element safeguards EPW.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Removes EPW from dangers of the battlefield.b. Does not allow anyone to abuse EPW.c. Prevents any prisoners from escaping.d. Treats EPW humanely. <p>7. The element tags the EPW with DA Form 5976 (Enemy Prisoner of War Capture Tag).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Annotates the following information: . | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Date and time of capture. (2) Capturing unit. (3) Grid coordinates of capture. (4) Circumstance of capture b. Attaches Part A to EPW. c. Retains Part B for unit records. d. Attaches Part C to property. 8. The element speeds EPW to the rear. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Notifies higher headquarters that the company has EPW. b. Coordinates for transportation, food, water, and emergency clothing for EPWs. c. Removes EPW rearward to the nearest MP collecting point. d. Exploits intelligence information. 9. The company questions EPWs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Attains immediate combat information, if the tactical situation permits. b. Ensures questioning does not slow the evacuation process. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

44-1-C220.07-1830

Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures

Status: Active

Condition: The unit is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. Unit weapon control status is WEAPONS HOLD. The unit has guidance provided by the Rules of Engagement (ROE) and from Mission Instructions such as the peace mandate, terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and Rules of Interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: OPFOR aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) did not detect the unit. The unit remained combat effective and was prepared for follow-on missions. No friendly unit suffered casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. The unit complied with the rules of engagement/rules of interaction (ROE/ROI), mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders. Collateral damage was minimized.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Unit leader directs passive air defense measures in a tactical position.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Uses all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, dispersion, and so forth) to hide personnel and equipment to limit their vulnerability. Unit monitoring the early warning net achieves air situation awareness.b. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms.c. Mans OPs /LPs (daytime or nighttime) to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs).d. Establishes a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if equipment is available and operational.e. Constructs field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment.f. Disperses vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack.g. Covers or shades shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.h. Complies with ROE/ROI.i. Conducts command and control of operations digitally:<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) Maintains digital situational awareness.(2) Submits digital reports and overlays.(3) Directs movement, positioning, and fires digitally.* 2. Unit leader directs passive air defense measures in a convoy.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Convoy commander briefs all unit personnel.b. Camouflages vehicles and equipment before moving out.c. Selects column interval based on instructions, mission, and terrain.d. Place crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover front, rear, and flanks (air avenues of approach).e. Assigns soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees.f. Visually identifies threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>g. Reports all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.</p> <p>NOTE: As the unit conducts operations, it adds to the Red SA by sending SPOTREPs of threat activity and obstacles via FBCB2. When a vehicle commander sends a SPOTREP, he automatically populates the FBCB2 systems in his platoon with an icon representing the threat. The Red SA generated by FBCB2 is only as good as the reports that it receives, and will never give a complete threat picture. Vehicle commanders and platoon leaders must make sure vehicle scan plans and platoon fire control distribution plans are adequate to detect threat forces not yet reported by digital means.</p> <p>h. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms.</p> <p>i. Complies with ROE/ROI.</p> <p>3. Unit personnel perform passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing.</p> <p>a. Maintains vehicle interval specified in the movement order.</p> <p>b. Staggers vehicles to avoid linear patterns.</p> <p>c. Assigns air guards to sectors of search that cover 360 degrees and maintains coverage until convoy completes the movement.</p> <p>d. Visually identifies threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs).</p> <p>e. Reports all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.</p> <p>f. Establishes vehicle order of precedence.</p> <p>g. Complies with ROE/ROI.</p> | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

44-1-C221.07-1332

Conduct Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Infantry/Mech Infantry Company/Platoon))

Status: Active

Condition: The unit is tactically deployed. Hostile aircraft have been operating in the area. The unit is alerted that hostile aircraft are approaching or aircraft fires on the unit. The unit has guidance provided by the Rules of Engagement (ROE) and from Mission Instructions such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and Rules of Interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: All personnel start and stop fire on order, and destroy the attacking aerial platforms or force them away from friendly positions. All personnel use the engagement technique ordered by the leader. The unit remains combat effective and is prepared for follow-on missions. The unit complies with the ROE/ROI, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. Collateral damage is minimized.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>1. The aircraft approaches the unit location.</p> <p>Note: Unit complies with ROE/ROI in all cases when engaging enemy aircraft.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Any member alerts the unit of approaching aircraft ("Aircraft, right front").b. If fired on by the aircraft, without order or signal, all personnel immediately return fire, using the appropriate engagement technique.c. If not fired on, leaders order personnel to seek cover ("Aircraft, right front, seek cover").d. Unit personnel track the aircraft.e. The drivers take evasive action and move the vehicles to covered and concealed positions. <p>* 2. The unit leader identifies the aircraft.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Recalls weapons control status.b. Selects engagement technique. <p>3. On order, unit members fire at the enemy aircraft (cyclic rate of fire), using directed engagement technique.</p> <p>4. The unit members continue to fire at the attacking aircraft.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Vehicles stop.b. Members cease fire (except gunner), dismount, disperse, and seek covered and concealed positions.c. Members resume firing at a cyclic rate of fire and use designated engagement technique. <p>5. The unit leader orders the unit members to cease firing.</p> <p>* 6. The unit leader reports (FM voice/digital) the enemy aircraft (type, location, course) to higher headquarters.</p> <p>7. The unit consolidates and reorganizes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Reestablishes chain of command. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Evaluates and treats casualties. 8. The unit continues the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. If moving, resumes proper formation. b. If in a defense position, ensures that all weapon systems are manned. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

71-2-0065.07-3000

Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The unit has received an operation order/fragmentary order (OPORD/FRAGO), or warning order (WARNO) from the commander. It has a map with overlays, graphic control measures and applicable standing operating procedures (SOP). The order specifies the time of movement and describes the enemy situation. The unit has conducted linkup with any attachments. Time is available to conduct troop-leading procedures. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The unit is prepared to move by the time specified in the order with operational weapons, equipment, and basic load of supplies as specified by the order/platoon leader. All personnel can explain the higher unit mission, the higher commander's intent, the platoon mission, and their specific tasks and duties to support the mission. All attachments are received, briefed, and inspected. The unit remains combat effective and is prepared for follow-on missions. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. Collateral damage is minimized.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. Senior leader receives and analyzes the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Receives the mission from the commander.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Obtains clarification from the commander of all aspect of the mission (commander's intent/implied tasks).(2) Coordinates with adjacent units and CS units in the company/company team (as necessary/appropriate).b. Conducts an initial METT-TC analysis to determine the requirements for a WARNO.c. Disseminates all pertinent information contained in the WARNO, and/or disseminates initial WARNO as quickly as possible. <p>NOTE: The platoon leader issues the initial WARNO as soon as possible after receiving the initial information from the commander so the section/squad leaders and other key subordinates can start their planning and preparation. The platoon leader uses one-third of the available time for planning, to include the issuing of the platoon OPORD. He allocates the remaining two-thirds to the sections/squads, allowing his key subordinate leaders to plan and prepare for the upcoming mission. He issues subsequent warning orders as more information becomes available or as the situation changes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Includes enough information for subordinate elements to start preparation for the mission.(2) Includes movement instructions if movement is to be initiated before OPORD issuance.(3) Addresses the items not covered in the unit SOP. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>d. Unit members concurrently perform readiness, maintenance, and functional checks under the supervision of their leaders. They check:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Vehicles. (2) Weapons. (3) Night observation devices. (4) Communications equipment. (5) NBC equipment. (6) Any special equipment. <p>2. Senior leader issues WARNOs. At a minimum, WARNOs include the following: NOTE: Senior leader uses overlays prepared on the FBCB2 and sends digitally to vehicle commanders. The senior leader receives FBCB2 overlays (maneuver, threat forces, obstacles, fire support, CSS) that may be filtered, simplified, and forwarded digitally to all vehicle commanders. Traditional overlays and maps should also be maintained in case of a communication failure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Task organization of the unit. b. Friendly and enemy situations. c. Operational graphics. <p>NOTE: Operational graphics issued with the initial platoon WARNO normally consist of the higher unit graphics received by the senior leader with the higher WARNO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Time and nature of the operation. e. Tentative timeline. f. Security instructions. g. Time and place the OPORD will be issued. h. Delegation/assignment of preparatory tasks to the senior NCO, vehicle commanders, subordinate leaders, and other key subordinates. These include, but are not limited to the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Graphics production. (2) Development of terrain model. (3) Coordination requirements. (4) CSS requirements. (5) Precombat checks (PCC) and precombat inspections (PCI). (6) Rehearsals. <p>3. Senior leader makes a tentative plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The senior leader completes the tentative plan (including both fire and movement control measures). <p>4. Unit initiates movement IAW WARNO/OPORD/FRAGO and/or unit SOP(The senior leader may initiate movement as early as immediately following the WARNO, if the situation dictates.).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumes the appropriate REDCON level. b. Dispatches quartering party as necessary. c. Begins priorities of work. d. Conducts time-distance check of the route to the SP (as necessary). e. Conducts movement (either tactical roadmarch or tactical movement) moving to an advantageous location from which the platoon can effectively prepare for the upcoming mission. <p>5. Unit conducts reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requests information update from the commander. b. Adjusts the tentative plan based on results of the reconnaissance. <p>* 6. Senior leader completes the plan.</p> <p>* 7. Senior leader issues the order.</p> <p>* 8. Senior leader/senior NCO/subordinate leaders supervise and refine unit preparations.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>NOTE: The activities covered in this task step begin immediately upon receipt of the higher order (WARNO/OPORD/FRAGO) and continue concurrently with the other troop-leading steps.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Senior NCO directs and supervises resupply operations. b. Senior NCO supervises each section/squad leaders PCCs. Checks include, but are not limited to, the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Before-operations PMCS are conducted for vehicles, weapon systems, communications, and NBC and ancillary equipment. (2) As applicable, PMCS deficiencies are repaired and/or reported to maintenance elements. (3) Prepare-to-fire checks are conducted for all weapon systems. (4) Weapon systems are boresighted. (5) All weapons are test-fired, if possible. (6) Communications are checked, and the correct frequencies are set on each radio based on the OPORD or unit SOP. (7) Operational checks are conducted on NVDs, NBC materials, and special equipment. (8) Each vehicle is loaded IAW the unit load plan/SOP. (9) All required items are resupplied. (10) If METT-TC allows, vehicles are camouflaged to match the area of operations. (11) Soldiers are in correct uniform. (12) Each soldier's knowledge of the plan is tested to ensure that he understands the platoon leader intent. (13) Status of PCC is reported to the platoon leader. c. Senior leader/Senior NCO or designated representative conducts PCIs to ensure that subordinate leaders have completed all required PCCs. d. Senior leader and other subordinate leaders continue to supervise and refine throughout execution of the operation. e. Senior leader coordinates for the mission. f. Senior leader (or senior NCO or subordinate leader) receives attachments and integrates into unit. g. Senior leader plans sustainment of combat operations. h. Unit performs continuous reconnaissance during the operation. Unit identifies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Unit monitors actions of higher, adjacent, and supporting units and informs leader about enemy contacts, friendly locations and actions, calls for fire, etc. j. Senior leader reacts to orders from higher headquarters or changes in the situation and initiates maneuver, fires, or other actions as directed or required. k. Unit headquarters reports combat-critical information to higher, adjacent, and supporting units IAW the unit SOP or as ordered, and includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> l. Unit headquarters disseminates information to the unit (enemy contacts, friendly locations and actions, calls for fire, etc.). | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

71-2-0220.07-3403

Assault an Enemy Position (Infantry/Mech Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: While operating as part of a company team during tactical operations, the platoon receives a FRAGO directing it to assault an enemy position. Elements within the company team are in contact with the enemy; they are in blocking positions or in support by fire positions suppressing the enemy force. Engineer assets may be attached to the platoon. Indirect fire and intelligence assets may be available to the platoon. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon destroys the enemy force, renders them combat-ineffective, or forces them to withdraw from the objective. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The platoon occupies the last covered and concealed position before the objective.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Scans the objective.b. Confirms the type, size, and locations of enemy elements.c. Confirms the types and locations of any obstacles.* 2. Platoon leader conducts assault position activities (if applicable).<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Confirms friendly and enemy situations.b. Confirms direct fire responsibilities.c. Positions artillery observers and confirms their responsibilities.d. Conducts final checks of vehicles, weapons, and equipment.e. Reorganizes platoon as necessary to compensate for combat losses.f. As applicable, collects updated enemy information from section/squad leaders, support forces, and company commander.g. Issues FRAGO to the platoon, covering the following:<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) Friendly and enemy situations.(2) Any changes to the company team and platoon task or purpose.(3) Any changes to the scheme of maneuver.h. Sends SPOTREP and/or updated SITREPs to the company commander as necessary.* 3. Platoon leader sets the conditions for the assault by conducting (or requesting that the company team conduct) one or more of the following actions:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Employs screening or obscuring smoke to isolate enemy forces from friendly support and/or adjacent units.b. Employs direct fires to fix adjacent or reserve enemy elements, preventing them from repositioning or reinforcing the objective area.c. Employs indirect and/or direct fires to suppress and/or destroy enemy forces on the objective.4. The platoon maneuvers against and engages enemy forces.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Conducts fire and maneuver.<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) Base of fire elements suppress and/or destroy enemy vehicles and fighting positions with direct fire. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Bounding elements maneuver to gain positional advantage over enemy vehicles and fighting positions and makes them vulnerable to the assault. b. Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle (Bradley - Dismounted) if required IAW battle drill 7-3-D312-REV to penetrate the enemy's protective obstacle belt. c. Employs platoon level assault tactics techniques and procedures. d. Based on METT-T conducts dismounted assault in conjunction with mounted maneuver. The techniques for dismounting are short of, on, or beyond the objective. e. The platoon may perform the following battle drills: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Knock Out Bunkers (Platoon) 7-3-D306 and/or Knock Out Bunkers (Bradley - Dismounted) 7-3-D306-REV (2) Enter Building/Clear Room/Building (Bradley - Dismounted) 7-4-D309-REV (3) Enter/Clear a Trench (Bradley - Dismounted) 7-3-D310-REV. f. Employs indirect fires to isolate portions of the objective area, to obscure enemy element, and/or to screen the movement of friendly elements. g. Destroys enemy forces, renders them combat-ineffective, or forces their withdrawal from the objective area. 5. Platoon occupies designated defensible positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Occupies defensible positions on the objective area, or if the objective is not defensible, assaults through the objective to occupy defensible terrain beyond it IAW the company commander's intent. * 6. Platoon leader reports the situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Compiles SITREPs from section/squad leaders. b. Submits updated SITREPs to the company commander as necessary. 7. Platoon conducts consolidation and reorganization IAW T&EO 7-3-4607. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task
71-2-0318.07-3128
Conduct Link-up (Infantry/Mech Infantry Platoon)
Status: Active

Condition: The unit is operating separately or as part of a company and is ordered to link up with another unit. Platoon-size enemy elements are operating in the area. (The unit could be the stationary or moving unit.) The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The unit takes all necessary actions to prepare for linkup operations. The units linkup at the time and place specified in the order. The main bodies of the units are not surprised by the enemy. The linked-up units consolidate and establish a chain of command. The unit submits a timely and accurate SITREP to its higher headquarters. The unit remains combat effective and is prepared for follow-on missions. The unit complies with the ROE/ROI, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. Collateral damage is minimized.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>NOTE: The digital navigation system equipment allows constant situational awareness between elements conducting a linkup, passage of lines, or relief operation (any operation that involves friendly units moving toward each other) to aid navigation and fratricide prevention. For example, a moving squad or vehicle can monitor the location of the stationary unit and linkup site using the position updates and digital graphics displayed on the digital display. The stationary unit can also monitor the moving unit's location as they move along the prescribed route to the linkup point by monitoring position updates on the digital display. As the moving force closes on the linkup site the stationary force is more aware of their presence and location reducing the possibility of fratricide. The moving unit does the same type monitoring to reduce fratricide potential. Once the moving unit nears the linkup location, the stationary unit should challenge them. This may be done digitally, visually, or with audible sounds using any prearranged signals. For example, the stationary unit can give the moving unit a series of flashes using an infrared source during limited visibility. The moving force responds with a pre-coordinated number of flashes. The challenge and password is also used between the two units digitally or verbally.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Leaders conduct troop leading procedures and plans a linkup. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts command and control of operations digitally: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maintains digital situational awareness. (2) Submits digital reports and overlays. (3) Directs movement, positioning, and fires digitally. b. Develops a scheme of maneuver and control measures (contact points, checkpoints, phase lines, routes, and zones of actions). | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Develops a fire plan. d. Plans actions at the linkup point. e. Develops contingency plans for -- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Enemy contact before, during, or after linkup. (2) How long to wait at the linkup site. (3) What to do when some elements do not arrive at the linkup site. (4) Alternate linkup points and rally points. f. Ensures that the rules of engagement (ROE) are disseminated to subordinates. <p>* 2. The unit leader identifies the tentative linkup site by map reconnaissance or a linkup site is designated by higher headquarters. The site should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Be easy to recognize. b. Provide cover and concealment. c. Be away from natural lines of drift. d. Be defensible. e. Provide multiple access and escape routes. f. Not be located on terrain the enemy is likely to occupy (key terrain, possible enemy objectives). <p>* 3. The unit leader coordinates with the linkup unit.</p> <p>Note: For linkup between digitized units blue SA is automatically distributed down to each individual vehicle in the company equipped to operate on the tactical Internet. FBCB2 screens do not currently provide locations for every friendly element on the battlefield (e.g. Dismounted infantry squads, scout OPs, or allied troops that may be operating in or adjacent to the platoon's battle space). Icons representing these formations may be inputted into FBCB2 based on FM transmitted reports, but are not updated in real time. You cannot use the FBCB2 system as the sole instrument for clearing fires and/or preventing fratricide.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Exchanges frequencies, call signs, and codes. b. Confirms visual signals and alternatives (near and far recognition signals). c. Exchanges fire coordination measures (for example, restrictive fire line). <p>NOTE: AFATDS has the ability to share information between echelons facilitates fire planning at all levels.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Coordinates command relationship with the linkup unit. (Who is in charge if the enemy attacks during linkup?) (Who is in charge after linkup?) e. Plans actions following linkup. f. Exchanges control measures (contact points, checkpoints, phase lines, and others, as required). Establishes how long the linkup site will be occupied (that is, length of time or until a designated percentage of the unit arrives). <p>4. The stationary unit performs linkup actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Occupies the linkup rally point before the time stated in the unit order. b. Establishes all-round security. c. Establishes communications with the other unit. d. Prepares to accept the moving unit at the linkup point. <p>5. The moving unit performs linkup actions.</p> <p>NOTE: Blue SA is automatically distributed down to each individual vehicle in the company equipped to operate on the tactical Internet. FBCB2 screens do not currently provide locations for every friendly element on the battlefield (e.g. Dismounted infantry squads, scout OPs, or allied troops that may be operating in or adjacent to the platoon's battle space). Icons representing these formations may be inputted into FBCB2 based on FM transmitted reports, but are not updated in real time. You cannot use the FBCB2 system as the sole instrument for clearing fires and/or preventing fratricide.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates control measures, including (at a minimum) the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Contact points. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Checkpoints. (3) OPs, BPs, and TOC positions. (4) TRP locations and responsibility. b. Coordinates friendly forces information, including (at a minimum) the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Unit designations and dispositions. (2) Friendly obstacles and mines. (3) Command post locations. (4) SOI information. (5) Tactical plans and situations (routes, indirect fire data, location of flanks, OPs/patrols, sector(s) of fire. c. Coordinates enemy information, including (at a minimum) the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Number and types of enemy units (if known). (2) Specific enemy locations (if known). (3) Obstacles, mines, and contaminated areas. (4) Suspected enemy avenues of approach (mounted/dismounted). d. Coordinates mission-specific information designated in the OPORD/FRAGO or requested by the commander. e. Determines time and location of next coordination. * 6. Senior leader at the contact point keeps commander informed throughout the linkup. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sends updated SITREPs as necessary during the linkup. <p>NOTE: FBCB2 provides standardized reports that streamline the reporting process, but that do not eliminate the requirement for FM voice message traffic. Additionally, leaders may need to send verbal descriptions of threat locations, routes, or obstacles to help clarify the situation, especially in close or urban terrain where the FBCB2 system's capabilities are limited.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Reports information obtained during coordination as previously specified by the commander. c. Reports completion of linkup/coordination. 7. The moving unit performs linkup actions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Halts at a safe distance from the linkup point in a covered and concealed position (linkup rally point), and establishes local security. b. Establishes communications with the stationary unit. 8. The unit leader and the contact team (security element with communications) prepare to make physical contact with the stationary unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issues contingency plans to the contact team and to the element leader, who remains with the main body of the unit in the linkup rally point. b. Maintains communications with the unit. c. Positions security element in a covered and concealed position that overwatches the linkup point. d. Verifies far and near recognition signals of the stationary unit. e. Does not block the security element's observation and fields of fire while approaching the linkup point. f. Links up with members from the stationary unit and exchanges oral authentication. g. Conducts final coordination with the stationary unit. h. Guides the stationary unit contact team to the unit linkup rally point. 9. The stationary unit contact team executes the linkup procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Guides the moving unit from its linkup rally point to the stationary unit linkup rally point. b. Completes the linkup by the time specified in the OPORD. c. Alerts its main body before bringing the moving unit to the stationary unit linkup rally point. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 10. The unit continues its mission IAW the OPORD. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

71-2-0322

Conduct Withdrawal (Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: While conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company team, the platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to withdraw from enemy contact. The withdrawal may or may not be conducted under pressure. Another element may or may not be available to provide security for the withdrawal. Indirect fire and intelligence assets may be available to the platoon. Contact may occur at the LD. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon breaks contact with the enemy and moves to a designated location where the enemy cannot observe or engage the platoon with direct fire. If the withdrawal is assisted conducts battle handover with the security force. If the withdrawal is unassisted, it completed the withdrawal, including disengagement of its own detachment left in contact (DLIC). The platoon's security is not compromised in either situation. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">* 1. The platoon leader plans for the withdrawal IAW OPORD/FRAGO.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Coordinates/plans indirect fires.b. Coordinates with adjacent units (if necessary).c. Determines when to start the withdrawal.d. Determines the location for remount points; assembly area or BP to which the platoon will withdraw.e. Determines the routes to be used during the withdrawal.f. Determines the platoon and/or company team linkup plan for the DLIC.g. Determines the method for withdrawal.* 2. Platoon leader establishes security and/or base of fire for the withdrawal.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. If withdrawal is assisted, coordinates with the security element (provided by another unit) to ensure adequate security and/or base of fire for the platoon during the withdrawal.b. If withdrawal is unassisted, designates a DLIC to provide overwatch and/or base of fire.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Designates one infantry squad or BFV section to execute the DLIC mission.OR(2) Constitutes the DLIC using ad hoc elements from all sections/squads, with the PSG as the DLIC NCOIC.3. If withdrawal is assisted, platoon disengages from enemy contact IAW the following battle drill 7-3-D304 or 7-3/4-D323.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Conducts rearward passage of lines through security force IAW T&EO 07-3-1125.07-3000 Conduct Passage of Lines Infantry Platoon.b. Conducts battle handover to the security force.c. Conducts movement to and occupation of the assembly area or BP, establishing local security IAW OPORD/FRAGO or METT-T.4. If withdrawal is unassisted, platoon disengages from enemy contact, with its own DLIC IAW battle drill 7-3-D304 or 7-3/4-D323. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employs indirect fires to suppress or obscure enemy elements or to screen movement. b. As the tactical situation permits, executes disengagement of DLIC. c. Conducts movement to and occupation of the assembly area or BP, establishing local security IAW OPORD/FRAGO or METT-T. <p>* 5. Platoon leader completes disengagement actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sends SITREP to the company commander indicating size, composition, and disposition of remaining enemy forces. b. Reports completion of the withdrawal to the company commander. c. Directs consolidation and reorganization IAW T&EO 07-3-4607 Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization Rifle Platoon Mounted. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

71-2-0331.07-3126

Conduct Air Assault (Infantry/Mech Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: The unit is required to conduct movement by helicopter. The unit is operating separately or as part of a company. The unit must provide its own security. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and CAS available. ROE is published.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The unit main body is not surprised at the pick up zone (PZ). All unit personnel and equipment are prepared for movement at the time and place specified. Each helicopter is loaded IAW the time plan designated in the OPORD. A sufficient number of leaders, personnel, and key equipment are moved to the landing zone (LZ) to accomplish the mission and conduct further combat operations. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Leaders conduct troop leading procedures.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Perform task, Conduct Command and Control of Operations Digitally.* 2. The senior leader organizes the load based on the allowable cargo load as stated in the OPORD or FRAGO.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Designates chalks and chalk leaders.b. Maintains tactical integrity (keeps teams and squads together on the same aircraft).c. Maintains self-sufficiency (keeps weapon systems i.e., machine guns, Dragons and Javelins, and their crews on the same aircraft with ammunition and components).d. Distributes key personnel and weapons among the aircraft.<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) Identifies possible enemy avenues of approach into and out of PZs and LZs.(2) Identifies obstacles and possible enemy defensive positions.(3) Identifies key terrain and possible covered and concealed locations for friendly and enemy forces.* 3. The senior leader briefs personnel on the helicopter landing formation.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Informs them of LZ, PZ and rendezvous points.b. Informs them of the type of aircraft.c. Informs them of the allowable cargo load of aircraft.d. Informs them of the contingency plan for downed aircraft (both for personnel on the aircraft and the remainder of the unit).4. The chalk leaders, crew chief or designated individual will brief personnel in the chalk.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Inform them when to load and where to sit on the aircraft.b. Inform them of emergency procedures to be used in an emergency.c. Inform them of what to do when the aircraft lands.d. Maintains local security.5. The senior leader establishes priority for loading. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates the priority of aircraft loads. b. Designates personnel to be bumped (if necessary) on each aircraft. c. Ensures bumped personnel (if any) are told to report to the straggler control point. d. Ensures each aircraft is loaded so that dismounting personnel can react promptly and contribute to mission accomplishment. <p>6. Unit members prepare the equipment for loading IAW the unit SOP.</p> <p>7. Unit members secure the assigned portion of the pickup zone while waiting to load the aircraft.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Remain dispersed, covered, and concealed while awaiting the aircraft's arrival. b. Approach aircraft only after landing is completed. c. Approach aircraft (front or side) at double-time. d. Load at LZ or PZ at the time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. e. Troops keep low when approaching and departing a helicopter, especially on slopes. <p>8. Leaders enforce safety measures IAW the unit SOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Keep safety belts fastened when airborne (training). b. Ensure weapons are on SAFE. c. Secure radio antennas. d. Secure hand grenades. <p>9. Leaders ensure soldiers dismount the aircraft after it lands.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prevent soldiers from jumping from a hovering helicopter until directed to do so by a member of the aircraft crew training. b. Move the personnel out about 20 meters from the side of the aircraft and assume prone firing positions (facing outward). c. Watch for enemy and wait for aircraft to leave. d. Move to the assigned positions to provide all-round security. e. Evacuate casualties on departing aircraft. f. Proceed with the mission IAW the OPORD. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task
71-2-1025.07-3124
Conduct Relief in Place (Infantry Platoon)
Status: Active

Condition: The platoon is ordered to relieve another unit in place or is to be relieved by another unit. The enemy can attack with indirect fire, air support, or ground forces up to company-size. Civilians, government organizations, NGOs, PVOs, and the international press are present on the battlefield.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon starts the relief NLT the time specified in the order. Defeats any enemy attacks during the relief. The enemy does not detect the relief. The relief is completed NLT the time specified. The relieved unit has all personnel and equipment assembled at the designated location NLT the specified time. The US forces comply with the ROE.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The platoon leader or designated representative coordinates with relieved/relieving unit IAW OPOD/FRAGO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves to the designated contact point. b. Coordinates/exchanges the following information with the relieved/relieving unit: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Time the relief is to begin and end. (2) Time or event that triggers the change of responsibility for the sector or zone to the relieving unit. (3) Sequence of relief, using one of the following techniques: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Sequential relief, relieving one subordinate unit at a time, when maximum security is required and/or there is sufficient time. (b) Simultaneous relief, relieving all subordinate units at the same time, when time is limited. (4) Method of relief, using one of the following methods: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) By alternate element position. The relieving element occupies a position separate from that of the relieved unit. (b) By alternate vehicle or squad position. The relieving element occupies vehicle or squad positions within the same BP as the relieved unit. (5) Procedures for use of guides. <p>NOTE: The unit relieved provides guides to the relieving unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (6) Routes and critical control measures into and out of positions. (7) Graphics depicting alternate/supplementary battle and/or fighting positions. (8) Battle handover procedures for artillery and ADA. <p>NOTE: Fire support is normally provided by the relieved unit until the units transfer responsibility for the sector/zone.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (9) Actions on contact. (10) Platoon and BFV/infantry squad plans and sector sketches covering all crew-served weapons and vehicle positions. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>(11) Procedures for transfer of supplies (Classes III, IV, and V) and wire lines (if necessary).</p> <p>(12) Procedures for transfer of responsibility for obstacles in sector.</p> <p>(13) Communications data.</p> <p>* 2. Platoon leader issues OPORD/FRAGO, with emphasis on specifying the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Time the relief is to begin and end. b. Method for conducting the relief. c. Critical control measures. d. Criteria for battle handover. e. OPSEC considerations. f. Locations of and transfer procedures for obstacles. g. Contingency plans in case of enemy contact during the relief. h. Responsibilities and requirements for transfer of supplies and equipment. i. Movement control information, including designated routes and graphic control measures. <p>3. Platoon conducts initial preparation for the relief as the relieving unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains OPSEC, taking these actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Changes frequencies on all platoon radios to the frequencies of the relieved unit. (2) Maintains radio listening silence (if specified in the OPORD/FRAGO). (3) Adheres to noise, light, and litter discipline. b. If applicable, identifies and prepares equipment for quick exchange with the relieved unit. c. Conducts reconnaissance. The following procedures apply: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Platoon representatives' move to the predetermined contact point to meet representatives from the unit being relieved. (2) Platoon representatives reconnoiter area of responsibility and vehicle positions of the relieved unit. d. Initiates movement, taking these actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Moves to predetermined contact points and meets guides from the relieved unit. (2) Maintains radio listening silence. (3) Collocate command and control elements. (4) Moves into hide positions and coordinates any final information. e. As necessary, occupies preliminary positions in preparation for conducting the relief. The following procedures apply: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Sections/squads occupy positions behind the unit to be relieved as determined in the coordination or as specified in the OPORD. (2) Platoon maintains REDCON-1 status. (3) Section/squad leaders report to the platoon leader when occupation is complete. (4) Platoon leader reports to the company commander when the platoon is prepared to conduct the relief. <p>4. Platoon conducts initial preparation and coordination as the relieved unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains communications as determined in the coordination or as specified in the OPORD. b. If applicable, identifies and prepares equipment for quick exchange with the relieving unit. c. Updates and/or prepares necessary range cards, sector sketches, fire plans, minefield records, and prestock supplies for transfer to the relieving unit. <p>5. Platoon completes preparations and coordination with the relieving or relieved unit.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Updates the enemy situation. b. Completes transfer of sector sketches and fire plans. c. Completes transfer of obstacle target folders and hasty protective minefield forms. d. Reports to the company commander that preparations for the relief are complete. <p>6. Platoon conducts the relief. The following procedures apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The relieved unit occupies alternate BFV or infantry squad positions if conducting a relief by alternate vehicle or squad position. OR b. The relieved unit occupies alternate section/squad BP(s) if conducting a relief by alternate element position. c. Guides from the relieved unit meet the relieving unit at the designated contact points, using covered and concealed routes and maintaining 360-degfree security. d. As applicable, guides lead the relieving unit to specified positions in the determined sequence of relief, using covered and concealed routes and maintaining 360-degfree security. e. Units transfer equipment and supplies (as required). f. The relieving unit remains OPCON to the relieved unit until the entire relieving unit is in place and prepared to assume the mission. <p>7. When all elements are in place, platoon completes relief actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Completes the relief by the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. b. Conducts battle handover, with relieving unit accepting responsibility. c. Section/squad leaders report completion of the relief to the platoon leader. d. Platoon leader reports completion of the relief to the company commander. e. As the relieved unit, moves to a predetermined rally point for accountability and/or moves to the assembly area designated by the commander. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task
71-2-2000.07-3000
Occupy Assembly Area (Infantry Platoon)
Status: Active

Condition: The platoon receives an operations order/fragmentary order (OPORD/FRAGO) directing it to occupy an assembly area independently or to occupy a portion of a larger force assembly area. The order and/or unit SOP specifies required assembly area activities, REDCON levels, and priorities of work. Time is available to complete assembly area procedures. Additional assets may be available for cross-attachment to the platoon. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon enters the assembly area without stopping or blocking the route of march, moves all personnel and equipment to their assigned positions NLT the time specified in the order, establishes local security, and maintains appropriate REDCON levels. The platoon performs all specified assembly area procedures and executes priorities of work as specified in the OPORD/FRAGO/unit SOP or by the platoon leader or commander. The unit complies with the ROE/ROI, mission instruction, higher headquarters and other special orders. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. Collateral damage is minimized.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>1. Leaders conduct troop leading procedures and assigned personnel perform quartering party duties in accordance with (IAW) guidance/unit SOP.</p> <p>NOTE: Recon platoons will routinely occupy assembly areas in order to prepare for future missions or conduct refit following an operation. Most often, the platoon will occupy a separate assembly area and be responsible for 360 degree security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Conduct command and control of operations digitally.<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) Maintain digital situational awareness.(2) Submit digital reports and overlays.(3) Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally.b. Assigns personnel to quartering party IAW unit SOP and or tactical requirements.c. Ensures that rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) are disseminated to subordinate personnel.d. Briefs personnel on platoon requirements for the quartering party. <p>2. Platoon clears the release point (RP) and moves into the assembly area (AA).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Assists in reconnaissance of the route and the proposed AA.b. Assists in improving and marking entrances, exits, and internal routes. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Assists in marking obstacles, mines, and contaminated areas. d. Selects and marks tentative platoon vehicles and dismounted team positions IAW OPOD/FRAGO/SOP. e. Maintains surveillance and provides security of the area until the arrival of the platoon. f. As required, posts platoon guides at the company team RP, if appropriate, or section guides at the platoon RP. <p>* 3. The platoon leader designates personnel for quartering party duties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Follows directions from the guides stationed at the RP (if guides are used). b. Quartering party members move from covered and concealed positions to link up with their section. c. Moves off the route of march and clears the RP without stopping or blocking traffic. d. Orients weapon systems outward to cover sectors of responsibility. <p>4. Platoon performs initial occupation of the assembly area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Follows directions from guides and moves into marked vehicle positions (using ground guides as necessary). b. Orients weapon systems to cover sectors of responsibility. c. Follows proper cool-down procedures, shuts down engines simultaneously. <p>* 5. Platoon leader/PSG initiates assembly area activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviews organization of the assembly area with quartering party personnel. b. Designates section direct fire responsibilities. c. Directs vehicle commanders to prepare sector sketches. d. Directs section/team leaders to prepare sector sketches. e. Keeps the commander/S3 informed of the status of the operation, taking the following steps as necessary: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Reports platoon's arrival at the assembly area. (2) Reports completion of initial occupation of assembly area positions. (3) As necessary throughout the operation, prepares and forwards SITREPs to the commander/S3. f. Determines security procedures, REDCON level, and priorities of work. <p>6. The platoon establishes and maintains local security under direction from the platoon leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigns each section a sector of the perimeter to ensure mutual support and to cover all gaps by observation and fire. b. Establishes patrols to prevent infiltration and to clear possible enemy OPs within assigned sector (if applicable). c. Designates an OP, and section leaders select OP personnel. d. Ensures the OP has communications with the platoon CP. e. (OP) Warns the platoon of any enemy approach before the platoon is attacked. f. Establishes communications security within the platoon IAW OPOD/FRAGO/SOP. <p>NOTE: This may include employment of wire communications to enforce radio listening silence or use low power on SINCGARS radios.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Camouflage vehicles and equipment. h. Prepares primary fighting positions. h. Enforces noise, light, and litter discipline. <p>7. Based on the priority of work established by the platoon leader, the platoon (can vary by platoon SOP and METT-TC):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positions weapon systems and assigns sectors of fire. b. Positions other assets attached to the platoon. c. Establishes the CP and wire communications. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Designates FPLs and FPFs. e. Clears fields of fire and prepares range cards and sector sketches. f. Camouflages the positions g. Coordinates with adjacent units; left, right, forward, and to the rear, if applicable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensures there are no gaps between elements. (2) Exchanges information on OP locations and platoon signals. i. Improves primary fighting positions by adding such things as overhead cover. j. Prepares alternate positions, then supplementary positions. k. Establishes a sleep and rest plan. l. Reconnoiters routes. m. Adjusts positions or control measures as required. n. Stockpiles ammunition, food, and water. o. Digs trenches to connect positions. p. Continues to improve positions. <p>8. The Platoon leader forwards a sector sketch to the company commander/S3 and keeps one for platoon use.</p> <p>9. Platoon performs field sanitation operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains adequate supply of potable water. b. Establishes latrines and hand-washing facilities. c. Performs personal hygiene activities. <p>10. Platoon assumes specified REDCON level, taking one of the following steps:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumes REDCON-1 (Full alert). (NOTE: A period of maximum preparedness, REDCON-1 ensures that all platoon personnel are alert and prepared for action immediately. Infantry squads, to include OPs, are recalled, vehicles are loaded and secured, and weapons are manned. Vehicles are ready to move immediately, with engines running.) OR b. Assumes REDCON -1.5 (Full alert). (NOTE: A period of maximum preparedness, this level has the same readiness requirements as REDCON-1 except that vehicle engines are not running.) OR c. Assumes REDCON-2 (Full alert). (NOTE: Equipment is stowed except for wire and telephone equipment, if used. Platoon vehicles and weapons are manned. Infantry squads, OPs and chemical alarms are still deployed. Engines are off. All vehicles are ready to move within 15 minutes of notification.) OR d. Assumes REDCON-3 (Reduced-alert). (NOTE: Fifty percent of each crew/squad stands down for feeding, rest, maintenance, or troop-leading procedures. Vehicles are ready to move within 30 minutes of notification.) OR e. Assumes REDCON-4 (Minimum-alert). (NOTE: Seventyfive percent of each crew/squad stands down for feeding, rest, maintenance, or troop-leading procedures. One vehicle per section has crew-served weapons manned. Crew-served weapons within each infantry squad are manned. OPs are manned. Vehicles are ready to move within 1 hour of notification.) <p>11. Platoon continues priorities of work, including OPSEC, maintenance, resupply, and rest activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains security IAW platoon leader's guidance, OPORD/FRAGO/SOP. b. Progressively increases REDCON levels as required based on company commander's guidance or unit SOP. <p>12. Platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures until ordered to move for the next mission.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>13. On receipt of further orders, platoon leader conducts preparations for departing the assembly area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. As directed, reconnoiters route and/or calculates time-distance for departing the assembly area. b. Conducts police call to ensure no equipment, supplies, or other items of tactical or intelligence value is left behind. c. Progressively increases REDCON levels as required based on company commander's guidance or unit SOP. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

71-2-2420.07-3440

Conduct Bypass (Infantry/Mech Infantry/Antiarmor Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: During tactical operations as part of an organic unit or operating independently, the platoon makes contact with an enemy force and/or an obstacle. It initiates actions on contact and is then directed by the commander/platoon leader to conduct a bypass. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as a peace mandate terms of reference, Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon locates a suitable bypass route or axis affording cover and concealment and/or weapon standoff. It conducts the bypass without becoming decisively engaged by the enemy element. A fixing force from within the platoon maintains contact with the enemy element (if applicable). The platoon remains combat effective and is prepared for follow-on missions. The platoon complies with the ROE/ROI, mission instructions, higher headquarters and other special orders. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide. Collateral damage is minimized.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The platoon conducts reconnaissance.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Determines nature of enemy or obstacle contact, including size, location, composition, and other factors.b. Identifies bypass route that affords adequate cover and concealment and/or intervening distance, preventing the enemy from effectively obstructing and/or firing on the platoon.c. If adequate cover and concealment or intervening distance is not available, plans additional security measures, such as employment of screening or obscuring smoke.d. Ensures bypass affords routes away from enemy positions, obstacles, and kill sacks.e. Ensures that terrain along the bypass will support the maneuver of platoon and follow-on force vehicles (if applicable).NOTE: If the platoon does not locate a suitable bypass, the platoon leader sends a SITREP to the company commander and prepares the platoon to take actions as directed.2. Platoon leader conducts command and control of operations digitally.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Maintain digital situational awareness.b. Submit digital reports and overlays.c. Direct movement, positioning, and fires digitally.3. Platoon leader ensures that rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) are disseminated to subordinate personnel.4. If enemy contact is made, platoon initiates battle drill. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Fixing force (infantry platoon/company) maintains contact with enemy force. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Vehicles seek covered positions and the infantry squad dismounts. b. Suppresses the enemy using direct and/or indirect fire. c. Employs obscuring or screening smoke to facilitate the maneuver of the rest of the platoon. d. Maintains contact with the enemy until one of the following occurs: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) It completed destruction of the bypassed enemy element. (2) It is relieved by follow-on forces to rejoin the platoon. (3) It is attached to a follow-on force. e. Fixing force breaks contact. 6. Platoon (less the fixing force, if applicable) conducts tactical movement or maneuver along the route or axis, focusing on the following considerations: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses appropriate movement technique and formation. b. Based on formation selected and availability of overwatch, maintains proper weapons orientation to ensure 360-degree security. c. Identifies and reacts to enemy forces along the route (refer to paragraph 2 for the applicable battle drill). d. Avoids decisive engagement. e. Marks bypass as required. 7. After completion of the bypass, platoon takes appropriate actions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports completion and location of the bypass route to the company commander and adjacent platoon(s). c. Continues the assigned mission. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

71-2-2603.07-3429

Defend a Battle Position (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: While operating as part of a company team, the platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to defend a platoon battle position (BP). The platoon observes an advancing enemy element, or it is alerted to an enemy unit by a SPOTREP or contact report from the company team or an OP. Enemy contact is not expected prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Engineer, indirect fire, and intelligence assets may be available to the platoon. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon occupies the designated BP by the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. It orients on the designated portion of the company team's engagement area or sector of fire and maintains security. The platoon destroys or defeats the enemy force within its area. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The platoon leader directs hasty or deliberate occupation of a BP IAW OPORD/FRAGO.</p> <p>NOTE: Steps 2 through 6 apply to hasty occupation of a BP. Steps 7 through 20 apply to deliberate occupation of a BP.</p> <p>2. Platoon initiates hasty occupation of the BP.</p> <p>a. Platoon leader issues FRAGO for the hasty occupation. At a minimum the FRAGO includes the following:</p> <p>(1) Changes in friendly and enemy situations.</p> <p>(2) Changes to the platoon tasks and purpose and general changes to the scheme of maneuver that facilitate occupation of the defensive position.</p> <p>b. Based on METT-T, secures the position with infantry squads prior to the occupation by the platoon's BFVs.</p> <p>c. Enters the BP from the flank or rear.</p> <p>d. On order, moves simultaneously into turret-down positions within the limits of the BP.</p> <p>e. Platoon/section/squad leaders ensure all mounted weapon systems and infantry squads are oriented toward the center of the engagement area.</p> <p>3. Platoon leader designates defensive control measures and disseminates information to the platoon.</p> <p>a. Identifies tentative locations for BFVs and infantry squad fighting positions within the BP.</p> <p>b. Identifies TRPs, engagement area, and/or sectors of fire for the primary fighting positions.</p> <p>c. Identifies tentative locations for BFV and the infantry squad supplementary positions.</p> <p>d. Identifies TRPs, engagement area, and/or sectors of fire for the supplementary fighting positions.</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Designates covered and concealed displacement routes between the primary BP and alternate/successive BPs and remount points (as necessary). f. Designates OPs for enemy and indirect fire observation. * 4. Platoon leader and section/squad leaders adjust positions as necessary to cover TRPs, engagement areas, and/or sectors of fire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Adjusts primary position as required. b. Adjusts alternate and/or successive positions as required. c. Select covered and concealed displacement routes between primary, alternate, successive, and supplementary positions as necessary. * 5. Platoon leader directs the platoon to complete hasty occupation of the BP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs all BFVs (hull-down) and infantry squads to move into primary fighting positions and scan their sectors of fire. b. Reports "SET" to the company commander. c. Implements changes based on guidance from the company commander. d. Updates the platoon on any changes or reports from higher headquarters. e. As time permits, refines direct and indirect fire plans, including trigger lines, fire patterns, break points, and disengagement criteria/plan. <p>NOTE: For initiation and conduct of the defense of the BP, refer to task steps 21 through 23.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6. As time permits, platoon leader directs the platoon to continue improvement of the BP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs execution of additional steps of a deliberate occupation of a BP. b. Directs defensive priorities of work IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP. 7. Platoon conducts deliberate occupation of the BP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Occupies hide positions behind the BP using a coil, herringbone or linear formation based on METT-T. b. Establishes local security with both mounted and dismounted elements, and employing OPs as necessary. c. Performs simultaneous shutdown. * 8. Platoon leader and section/squad leaders prepare to conduct reconnaissance of the BP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Platoon leader designates the reconnaissance element. b. Platoon leader designates overwatch elements for the reconnaissance element. c. Platoon leader briefs the reconnaissance element and senior person (usually PSG) remaining in hide position on priorities of work, reconnaissance plan, security plan, and contingency plan. * 9. Platoon leader and reconnaissance element conducts reconnaissance of the BP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves to a vantage point to view defensive position from enemy's perspective (if possible). b. To maximum extent possible, uses covered and concealed routes. c. Moves through engagement area, identifying all likely enemy avenues of approach and key and/or defensive terrain. d. Evaluates any lateral routes. e. Determines how the enemy will attack, covering the following considerations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) How the enemy will employ reconnaissance assets. (2) Where and when the enemy will change formations, dismount infantry (if applicable), or establish support by fire positions. (3) Where and when the enemy will conduct a breach or assault. (4) Where and when the enemy will commit follow-on forces. (5) Effects of the enemy's combat multipliers. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>(6) The enemy's rate of movement.</p> <p>f. Marks TRPs that match the enemy scheme of maneuver through the depth of the sector.</p> <p>(1) Record and mark exact TRP locations.</p> <p>(2) Identify the purpose of each TRP.</p> <p>(3) Determines which sections/squads will mass fires on each TRP.</p> <p>g. Identifies locations of existing obstacles and possible positions for reinforcing obstacles.</p> <p>h. If possible, moves to vantage point within the defensive position for reinforcing obstacles.</p> <p>i. Identifies terrain that corresponds to the platoon and company teams control measures.</p> <p>j. Briefs the company teams scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>k. Develops platoon sector sketch that focuses fires at each TRP.</p> <p>l. Designates primary, alternate, and supplementary BPs, as required.</p> <p>m. Designates covered and concealed routes between primary, alternate and supplementary BPs.</p> <p>n. Designates OPs for indirect fire observation.</p> <p>o. Briefs platoon scheme of maneuver, to include trigger points, break points, disengagement criteria, and remount points.</p> <p>p. Designates, marks, and records key locations of the BP and in the engagement area (using daylight and limited visibility materials for marking).</p> <p>*10. Platoon leader/PSG or designated representative conducts linkup and adjacent unit coordination, focusing on the following critical requirements:</p> <p>a. Identifies location of OPs and patrols.</p> <p>b. Confirms that sectors of fire and observation overlap.</p> <p>c. Identifies location of adjacent units, vehicles, and primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</p> <p>d. Identifies location of dead space.</p> <p>e. Confirms location and types of obstacles.</p> <p>f. Confirms indirect fire data.</p> <p>g. Confirms communications information.</p> <p>h. Identifies routes into and out of the platoon's BP and routes to successive BPs.</p> <p>11. Platoon establishes security measures.</p> <p>a. Establishes OPs and conducts patrols to observe all avenues of approach into the platoon's sector (including infiltration and reconnaissance routes).</p> <p>b. Provides security for elements working forward in sector, such as engineers emplacing obstacles or digging survivability positions.</p> <p>c. Secures obstacles.</p> <p>d. Observes templated enemy LZs.</p> <p>e. Clears possible enemy OP positions.</p> <p>f. Establishes hide positions.</p> <p>12. Platoon sections/squads occupy the BP.</p> <p>a. Starts vehicles simultaneously following FM command or visual signals from platoon leader.</p> <p>b. Moves along designated covered and concealed routes and occupies hide positions behind primary BFV BPs.</p> <p>c. Moves simultaneously into turret-down positions and makes final adjustment.</p> <p>d. BCs/Gunners/squad leaders complete range cards and forwards one copy to the platoon leader.</p> <p>e. Platoon leader consolidates and confirms range cards/sector sketches and ensures the following:</p> | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Section/squad sectors of fire and observation overlap. (2) Section/squads sectors of fire tie in with those of adjacent units. f. Platoon leader records and reports grid locations of BFV/squad positions to company commander. g. BCs direct their vehicles back down to hide positions behind their primary BPs and shut down vehicles simultaneously. h. Platoon leader and section/squad leaders verify direct fire plans and proof BFV and squad positions. i. Platoon leader completes platoon sector sketch IAW T&EO 07-3-4142 and forwards one copy to the company commander. *13. Platoon leader plans for obstacle integration. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies assigned company team obstacles. b. Identifies where he plans to mass direct/indirect fires. c. Identifies and marks the necessary fire control measures on the ground. d. Identifies tentative locations of key weapon systems to provide obstacle coverage. e. Determines manpower requirements to assist the engineers in obstacle emplacement. f. Plans for security during emplacement. 14. Platoon sites in the obstacle group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. All vehicles confirm that they have obstacle coverage. b. Siting participants identify dead space and requirements to refine the location of the obstacle group and fire control measures. c. Marks the general limits and orientation of the obstacle group. 15. Platoon integrates obstacles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Emplaces obstacle group IAW company team OPORD/FRAGO. b. Emplaces protective obstacles to the front and flanks. *16. Platoon leader conducts obstacle turnover and transfer as required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts identify checks (normally for obstacle transfer). b. Conducts briefing on local friendly and enemy situations. c. Provides description of obstacles, to include location, type, marking, and composition. d. Briefs other obstacles, to include booby traps. e. Provides information on lanes, to include number, locations, markings, and closure plan. f. Transfers graphics and documentation, to include minefield records, demolition target folder, and other written records. g. Provides guidance on obstacle protection measures taken or required. *17. Platoon leader keeps company commander informed of obstacle operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports completion of obstacle emplacement, integration, and turnover/transfer. b. Reports grid location of the obstacle group and fire control measures. *18. Platoon leader refines his portion of the company commanders indirect fire plan IAW T&EO 07-3-1200.07-3000. *19. Platoon leader completes actions for deliberate occupation of the BP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports "SET" to the company commander. b. Submits the completed fire plan. c. Implements changes based on guidance from the company commander. d. Updates sections/squads on any changes or reports from higher headquarters. 20. As time permits, platoon improves the BP and conducts defensive priorities of work. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Improves primary BFV and infantry squad fighting positions. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Improves BFV and infantry camouflage protection. c. Conducts rehearsals based on time available. d. Maintains security and surveillance of engagement area. e. Clears fields of fire. f. Conducts vehicle maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks. g. Establishes thermal TRPs IAW unit SOP. h. Establishes wire communications IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP. i. Emplaces chemical alarms IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP. j. Emplaces PEWs or other warning devices IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP. k. Emplaces prestock ammunition and supplies. l. Emplaces decoys (if available). m. Improves alternate, supplementary, and/or successive BPs. n. Conducts maintenance and resupply as directed in the OPORD. <p>21. Platoon leader initiates the defense IAW company commander's guidance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Adjusts REDCON level as necessary. b. Directs all BFVs/infantry squads to move into fighting positions and scan their sectors of fire. c. Pulls in OPs (if applicable). <p>22. Platoon engages the enemy on order or when engagement criteria are met.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Platoon leader employs and focus' direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability. b. Platoon/section/squad leaders shift, refocus, and redistribute direct fires to defeat identifies enemy elements. c. Platoon leader/observers employ indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan and/or OPORD/FRAGO to achieve desired effects on the enemy force. d. Platoon leaders/observers direct lifting and shifting of indirect fires. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Shift indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements. (2) Lift indirect fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved. e. Platoon/section/squad leaders issue additional FRAGOs to direct or retask subordinate elements as required. f. Sections/squads move to remount points, alternate, supplementary, or successive BPs as required to maintain flexibility and survivability. g. Platoon/section/squad leaders send SPOTREPs and updated SITREPs and make recommendations to the higher commander as necessary. <p>23. Platoon displaces to successive defensive positions as necessary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Platoon/section/squad leader issues FRAGO to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the displacement criteria specified in the company commander's guidance and/or OPORD/FRAGO. b. If covered by an overwatch element, dismounted/mounted elements move to the remount point, then move as a unit to the next BP, with weapons systems oriented toward the enemy. OR c. If not covered by an overwatch element, displaces by section to remount point, then employs bounding overwatch to the next BP. d. Platoon leader sends a complete SITREP to the company commander when displacement is completed. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

71-2-2605.07-3430

Defend a Sector (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: While operating as part of a company team, the platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to defend in sector. The platoon observes an advancing enemy element, or it is alerted to an enemy unit by a SPOTREP or contact report from the company team or another element. Enemy contact is not expected prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Engineer, indirect fire, and intelligence assets may be available to the platoon. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon occupies the designated sector by the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. It establishes a series of BPs and engagement areas in depth to cover the sector. The platoon destroys or defeats the enemy force, preventing it from penetrating the rear boundary of the sector. As necessary, the platoon moves to and defends successive positions within sector. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The platoon leader directs preparation of the defensive sector IAW OPORD/FRAGO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Identifies the platoon's sector boundaries and no penetration line as necessary.b. Identifies, primary, supplementary, and successive defensive positions.c. Reconnoiters successive positions if specified in the OPORD/FRAGO.d. Identifies TRPs, engagement areas, and direct fire responsibilities for primary positions.e. Designates covered and concealed displacement routes between primary, supplementary, and successive positions as necessary.f. Designates OPs for indirect fire observation.g. Designates remount points for primary, supplementary, and successive BPs.h. Establishes local security, employing OPs and dismounted infantry squads. <p>2. Platoon initiates occupation of defensive positions within the designated sector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Conducts the steps for hasty or deliberate occupation of a BP based on time available IAW T&EO 71-2-2603.07-3429, Defend a Battle Position Infantry Platoon.b. Occupies primary section/squad (BFV/infantry squad) positions in sector.c. Prepares alternate and supplementary positions.d. Prepares successive positions if specified in OPORD/FRAGO. <p>* 3. Platoon leader and section/squad leaders adjust positions as necessary to effectively cover engagement areas and/or sectors of fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Adjusts primary positions as required to cover likely enemy avenues of approach in sector.b. Adjusts alternate, supplementary, and/or successive positions as required.c. Selects covered and concealed displacement routes between primary, alternate, successive and supplementary positions as necessary. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 4. Platoon leader plans for obstacle integration IAW company commander's guidance and/or OPORD/FRAGO. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies assigned company obstacles. b. Coordinates with attachments (if applicable) or engineers for obstacle emplacement and obstacle siting. c. Identifies where he plans to mass direct/indirect fires. d. Identifies and marks necessary fire control measures on the ground. e. Identifies tentative locations of key weapons (BFV/Javelin/MG) to provide obstacle coverage. f. Determines manpower requirements to assist the engineers in obstacle emplacement. g. Plans for security during obstacle emplacement. 5. Platoon elements sites in the obstacle group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated section/squad drives/patrols obstacle trace to ensure direct fire coverage. b. All BFVs/key weapons confirm that they have obstacle coverage. c. Siting participants identify dead space and requirements to refine the location of the obstacle group and fire control measures. d. Marks the general limits and orientation of the obstacle group. 6. Platoon elements integrate obstacles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Emplaces obstacle group IAW company OPORD/FRAGO. b. Emplaces protective obstacles to the front and flanks. * 7. Platoon leader conducts obstacle turnover and transfer as required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts identify checks (normally for obstacle transfer). b. Conducts briefing on local friendly and enemy situations. c. Provides description of obstacles, to include location, type, marking, and composition. d. Briefs other obstacles, to include booby traps. e. Provides information on lanes, to include number, locations, markings, and closure plan. f. Transfers graphics and documentation, to include minefield records, demolition target folder, and other written records. g. Provides guidance on obstacle protection measures taken or required. * 8. Platoon leader keeps company commander informed of obstacle operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports completion of obstacle emplacement, integration, and turnover/transfer. b. Reports grid location of the obstacle group and fire control measures. * 9. Platoon leader refines his portion of the company commanders indirect fire plan IAW T&EO 07-3-4142, Prepare Platoon Sector Sketch Infantry Platoon. 10. Platoon completes occupation of primary defensive positions IAW T&EO 71-2-2603.07-3429. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Section/squad leaders ensure that section/squad sectors of fire and observation overlap. b. Platoon leader ensures that platoon sectors of fire and observation tie in with adjacent units. c. Platoon/section/squad leaders verify direct fire plans and proof vehicles and squad positions. d. Emplaces protective obstacles throughout the depth of the sector and ensures coverage of the obstacles by direct and/or indirect fires. e. Requests NFAs for protection of OPs and forward positions. *11. Platoon leader completes actions for occupation of the defensive sector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports "SET" to the company commander. b. Submits the completed fire plan. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Implements changes based on guidance from the company commander. d. Updates the platoon on any changes or reports from higher headquarters. <p>12. As time permits, platoon improves the defensive positions and conducts defensive priorities of work.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Improves primary BFV and infantry squad fighting positions. b. Improves BFV and infantry camouflage protection. c. Conducts rehearsals based on time available. d. Maintains security and surveillance of engagement area. e. Clears fields of fire. f. Conducts vehicle maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks. g. Establishes thermal TRPs IAW unit SOP. h. Establishes wire communications IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP. i. Emplaces chemical alarms IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP. j. Emplaces PEWs or other warning devices IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP. k. Emplaces prestock ammunition and supplies. l. Emplaces decoys (if available). m. Improves alternate, supplementary, and/or successive BPs. n. Conducts maintenance and resupply as directed in the OPORD. <p>*13. Platoon leader initiates the defense in sector IAW company commander's guidance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Adjusts REDCON level as necessary. b. Directs all BFVs/infantry squads to move into primary fighting positions and scan their sectors of fire. c. Pulls in OPs (if applicable). <p>14. Platoon engages the enemy on order or when engagement criteria are met.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Platoon leader employs and focus' direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability. b. Platoon leader/observers employs and adjusts indirect fires IAW defensive plan and/or OPORD/FRAGO to achieve desired effect on the enemy force. c. On order or when specified criteria are met, platoon leader lifts or shifts fires and/or displaces platoon to supplementary or successive BP. d. Platoon leader ensures that platoon elements remain tied in with adjacent units after displacement. e. Platoon/section/squad leaders send SPOTREPs and updated SITREPs and make recommendations to the higher commander as necessary. <p>*15. Platoon/Section leader directs the defense in sector to mission completion.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs subordinate (BFVs/infantry squads) elements to move to remount point, alternate, supplementary, or successive BPs as required to focus fires in appropriate engagement area to prevent penetration of the rear boundary of the sector AND/OR b. Directs subordinate elements to move to remount point, alternate, supplementary, or successive BPs as required to maintain unity of effort with adjacent flank units in sector. c. Shifts, refocuses, and redistributes direct fires to destroy identified enemy elements. d. Directs the shifting of indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements and the lifting of fires to facilitate movement if friendly elements or when the target effects on the enemy have been achieved. <p>16. Platoon displaces to successive defensive positions in sector (as necessary).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Platoon leader issues FRAGO to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the displacement criteria specified in the company commander's guidance and/or OPORD/FRAGO. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. If covered by an overwatch element, dismounted/mounted elements move to the remount point, then move as a unit to the next BP, with weapons systems oriented toward the enemy. OR c. If not covered by an overwatch element, displaces by section to the remount point, then employs bounding overwatch to the next BP. d. Platoon leader sends a complete SITREP to the company commander when displacement is completed. e. Continues to defend in sector to mission completion. | | |

Synopsis Report for Collective Task

71-2-2607.07-3431

Defend a Strongpoint (Infantry Platoon)

Status: Active

Condition: While operating as part of a company team, the platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to defend a strongpoint. The platoon observes an advancing enemy element, or it is alerted to an enemy unit by a SPOTREP or contact report from the company team or another element. Enemy contact is not expected prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Engineer, indirect fire, and intelligence assets are available to the platoon. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

Standard: The platoon occupies the strongpoint by the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon defends the position until enemy forces are destroyed or the platoon is ordered to withdraw or displace. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The platoon initiates preparation of the strongpoint defense IAW OPORD/FRAGO.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Occupies a hide position behind or to the flank of the strongpoint.b. Establishes local security using BFVs and infantry squads.* 2. Platoon leader prepares to conduct reconnaissance of strongpoint area of operations.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Designates reconnaissance element.b. Designates overwatch elements.c. Briefs reconnaissance element and senior person (usually PSG) remaining in hide position on priorities of work, reconnaissance plan, security plan, and contingency plan.3. Platoon leader and reconnaissance element of the area of operations.<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Moves to a vantage point to view the strongpoint from enemy's perspective (if possible).b. To maximum extent possible, uses cover and concealed routes.c. Movers through engagement area, identifying all likely enemy avenues of approach and key and/or defensive terrain.d. Identifies covered and concealed routes into and around the strongpoint.e. Determines how the enemy will attack, covering the following considerations:<ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) How the enemy will employ reconnaissance assets.(2) Where and when the enemy will change formations or establish support by fire positions.(3) Where and when the enemy will conduct a breach or assault the strongpoint.(4) Where and when the enemy will commit follow-on forces.(5) Effects of the enemy's combat multipliers.(6) The enemy's rate of movement.f. Identifies dead space outside the strongpoint.g. Identifies restrictive terrain that must be cleared. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Identifies areas or terrain that allows line of sight to the strongpoint. i. Identifies locations of fortifications and possible bunker locations. j. Identifies locations of existing obstacles and possible positions for reinforcing obstacles. k. Identifies minefield locations. l. Identifies terrain that corresponds to higher headquarters control measures. m. Designates primary positions that support the company team scheme of maneuver. n. Designates primary positions that support the platoon scheme of maneuver. o. Designates OPs for indirect fire observation. p. Designates and marks locations and orientation of weapons systems, fighting positions, bunkers, trench lines, and TRPs. q. Identifies FPF. r. Identifies LZs and PZs. s. Evaluates number of weapon systems and infantry to cover strongpoint frontage and maintain security of the strongpoint. t. Determines placement of BFVs and infantry, including their weapon systems, to cover strongpoint frontage and maintain security of the strongpoint. u. Designates evacuation routes and remount points. * 4. Platoon leader establishes a reserve. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates size and composition of the reserve IAW METT-T analysis. b. Designates reserve priorities, which may include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Counterattack along a portion of the perimeter against an identified main effort. (2) Block enemy penetrations. (3) Reinforce a portion of the defensive line. c. Identifies covered and concealed routes from the reserve to move to any area in the strongpoint. d. Identifies the initial reserve position, dismount point(s), and positions for the reserve to occupy once committed. * 5. Platoon leader /PSG or designated representative conducts linkup and adjacent unit coordination, focusing on the following critical requirements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies location of OPs and patrols. b. Confirms those sectors of fire and observation overlap. c. Identifies location of adjacent units' vehicles and primary, alternate, and supplementary positions. d. Identifies location of dead space between the strongpoint and adjacent units. e. Confirms locations and types of obstacles. f. Confirms indirect fire data. g. Confirms communications information. h. Identifies routes into and out of the strongpoint. 6. Platoon establishes security measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes OPs and conducts patrols to observe all avenues of approach into the platoon's sector (including infiltration and reconnaissance routes). b. Provides security for elements working forward in sector, such as engineers emplacing obstacles or digging survivability positions. c. Secures obstacles. d. Observes templated enemy LZs and PZs. e. Clears possible enemy OP positions. f. Establishes hide positions. 7. Platoon leader plans for obstacle integration. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies assigned company team obstacles. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Identifies where plans to mass direct/indirect fires. c. Identifies and marks the necessary fire control measures on the ground. d. Identifies tentative locations of key weapon systems to provide obstacle coverage. e. Determines manpower requirements to assist the engineers in obstacle emplacement. f. Plans for security during emplacement. <p>8. Platoon sites in obstacle group.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. All vehicles confirm that they have obstacle coverage. b. Siting participants identify dead space and requirements to refine the location of the obstacle group and fire control measures. c. Marks the general limits and orientation of the obstacle group. <p>9. Platoon integrates obstacles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Emplaces obstacle group IAW company team OPORD/FRAGO. b. Emplaces protective obstacles to the front and flanks. <p>10. Platoon leader conducts obstacle turnover and transfer as required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts identify checks (normally for obstacle transfer). b. Conducts briefing on local friendly and enemy situations. c. Provides description of obstacles, to include location, type, marking, and composition. d. Briefs other obstacles, to include booby traps. e. Provides information on lanes, to include number, locations, markings, and closure plan. f. Transfers graphics and documentation, to include minefield records, demolition target folder, and other written records. g. Provides guidance on obstacle protection measures taken or required. <p>11. Platoon leader keeps company commander informed of obstacle operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports completion of obstacle emplacement, integration, and turnover/transfer. b. Reports grid location of the obstacle group and fire control measures. <p>*12. Platoon leader refines his portion of the company commanders indirect fire plan IAW T&EO 07-3-1200.07-3000 Employ Fire Support Rifle Platoon.</p> <p>13. Platoon leader consolidates BFV/infantry squad range cards/sector sketches IAW T&EO 07-3-4142, Prepare Platoon Sector Sketch Infantry Platoon and finalizes the platoon's strongpoint fire plan.</p> <p>14. Platoon conducts strongpoint priorities of work.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Improves primary BFV and infantry squad fighting positions. b. Improves BFV and infantry camouflage protection. c. Conducts rehearsals based on time available. d. Maintains security and surveillance of engagement area. e. Clears fields of fire. f. Conducts vehicle maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks. g. Establishes thermal TRPs IAW unit SOP. h. Establishes wire communications IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP. i. Emplaces chemical alarms IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP. j. Emplaces PEWs or other warning devices IAW OPORD/FRAGO/SOP. k. Emplaces prestock ammunition and supplies. l. Emplaces decoys (if available). m. Improves alternate, supplementary, and/or successive BPs. n. Conducts maintenance and resupply as directed in the OPORD. <p>*15. Platoon leader completes actions for occupation of the strongpoint.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports "SET" to the company commander. b. Submits the completed fireplan. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Implements changes based on guidance from the company commander. d. Updates the platoon on any changes or reports from higher headquarters. *16. Platoon leader improves the strongpoint and continues defensive priorities of work. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Improves primary BFV and infantry fighting positions. b. Improves BFV/infantry camouflage protection. c. Improves secondary/successive defensive line positions. d. Conducts rehearsals based on time available. e. Maintains 360-degeree security and surveillance of engagement areas. f. Conducts and prepare-to-fire checks. g. Conducts maintenance and resupply as directed in the OPORD. *17. Platoon leader initiates strongpoint defense IAW company commander's guidance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Adjusts REDCON level as necessary. b. Directs sections/squads to move into primary fighting positions and scan their sectors of fire. c. Pulls in OPs if necessary. 18. Platoon engages the enemy on order or when the engagement criteria are met. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Platoons employ and focus direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability. b. Platoon leader/observers employs and adjusts indirect fires IAW defensive plan and/or OPORD/FRAGO to achieve desired effect on the enemy force. c. Employs command-detonated munitions to destroy enemy elements. d. On order or when specified criteria are met, platoon leader lifts or shifts fires and/or displaces platoon to supplementary or successive fighting positions. e. Platoon/section/squad leaders send SPOTREPs and updates SITREPs and makes recommendation to the higher commander as necessary. *19. Platoon/section/squad leaders direct the strongpoint defense to mission completion. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Shifts, refocuses, and redistributes direct fires to defeat identified enemy elements. b. Directs the shifting of indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements and the lifting of fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when the target effects on the enemy have been achieved. c. Employs platoon reserve to counterattacks against enemy forces or reinforce the perimeter. d. Issues additional FRAGOs to direct or retask subordinate elements as required. e. Sends SPOTREPs and updated SITREPs and make recommendations to the higher commander as necessary. 20. Platoon leader directs defensive action to deny enemy penetration of strongpoint. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issues FRAGOs as necessary to reposition sections/squads within the perimeter of the strongpoint. b. Employs indirect fires at point of penetration to stop enemy momentum. c. Commits reserve force to facilitate the reinforcement of the defensive perimeter. d. Sends updated SITREPs to the task force commander as necessary. 21. Platoon withdraws to successive BP(s) on order or as necessary IAW T&EO 71-2-0322, Conduct Withdrawal Infantry Platoon. | | |

CHAPTER 6

EXTERNAL EVALUATION**Section I. INTRODUCTION****6-1. GENERAL**

An external evaluation measures the platoon's ability to perform its critical wartime operations. This chapter is a guide for preparing an external platoon evaluation. Units should use these same concepts to develop external evaluations for squads, crews, sections, or teams. Units may modify the evaluation, based on METT-T and the commander's guidance. The platoon evaluation is performance-oriented. Each platoon is evaluated by its parent brigade. The platoon is evaluated using the standards of the selected T&EOs in Chapter 5. This 48-hour evaluation assesses the platoon's tactical proficiency against a realistic opposing force. The evaluation is multiechelon in that each squad is evaluated as well as the platoon headquarters.

6-2. PURPOSE

Using the selected T&EOs, the senior evaluator and his assistants observe and record the performance of the leadership and the teamwork of the unit. An analysis of this data provides feedback on the strengths and weaknesses of the platoon and forms a basis for training and resource allocation.

Section II. MANAGEMENT OF THE EVALUATION**6-3. GENERAL**

This section provides general guidance and procedures for planning and scheduling the platoon evaluation. The evaluation is for local administration. Units must adapt their organization, planning, and scheduling phases to local conditions.

6-4. PLAN THE EVALUATION

The battalion commander selects the tasks from Chapter 5 based on the platoon's mission-essential task list. Chapters 2 and 3 provide a guide for selecting the T&EOs. Other factors to consider are as follows:

- a. There is no limit on the number of missions and T&EO tasks to be evaluated, but no more than three missions should be evaluated. Consideration in task selection, from both the execution and evaluation standpoint, should be given to the degree of difficulty of each task.

b. The length of the evaluation, like the number of the tasks, can affect the quality of the evaluation. Usually, the evaluation should be no longer than 48 hours, since skills often erode rapidly beyond that point.

6-5. MANAGEMENT OF TIME AND PERSONNEL

Table 6-1 recommends a start-finish frequency that reduces the evaluation period to a seven-day maximum (for all platoons). Sections IV and V outline the selection criteria for evaluator and OPFOR personnel, respectively.

a. **Opposing Force.** The platoon is evaluated on collective tasks as selected by the battalion commander. As few as 6 or as many as 96 OPFOR may be needed, depending on the missions and tasks selected for evaluation (assuming 3:1 or 1:3 evaluated platoon to OPFOR strength ratios). These are only guidelines for the size of the OPFOR—the size is METT-T dependent. Following the time sequence in Table 6-1, one set of OPFOR, in a stationary mode, supports the entire evaluation. This allows a minimum of 12 hours between each action.

b. **Evaluators.** The evaluators (Section IV) stay with the evaluated platoon before, during, and after (for the after-action review) the mission. If the time sequence in Table 6-1 is used, seven teams of evaluators are required. The first evaluating team starts with the first platoon at 0600 on the first day and ends at 0600 on the third day (assuming 48 hours to run the first platoon). The first evaluating team has to be ready to start again with the next platoon at 1800 hours on the same day. Other evaluating teams will have more time for evaluation and rest before starting the next platoon.

| PLATOON NUMBER | START TIME | FINISH TIME |
|----------------|------------|-------------|
| 1 | 0600 Day 1 | 0600 Day 3 |
| 2 | 1800 Day 1 | 1800 Day 3 |
| 3 | 0600 Day 2 | 0600 Day 4 |
| 4 | 1800 Day 2 | 1800 Day 4 |
| 5 | 0600 Day 3 | 0600 Day 5 |
| 6 | 1800 Day 3 | 1800 Day 5 |
| 7 | 0600 Day 4 | 0600 Day 6 |
| 8 | 1800 Day 4 | 1800 Day 6 |
| 9 | 0600 Day 5 | 0600 Day 7 |

Table 6-1. Start-finish time for platoon evaluation.

NOTE: Platoon training in this time sequence degrades to some extent the “standardized” capabilities of the evaluation. Some platoons perform a certain task during daylight, others at night. As an alternative, all platoons can start at the same time of day, but this extends the overall evaluation by four days. When evaluating one platoon or several platoons concurrently—

1. The ideal schedule is that one platoon completes the evaluation before another platoon starts. Although it is time-consuming, this schedule ensures similar conditions for all platoons and requires the least material and personnel resources.
2. Several platoons can be evaluated concurrently by using different sites or staggering the start times at the same site. Evaluation conditions change because the terrain changes. The resources required are a multiple of the number of evaluated platoons.

Section III. PREPARATION OF THE EVALUATION

6-6. GENERAL

For an evaluation to be a valid measure of the platoon’s abilities, the evaluation headquarters must standardize procedures and plan carefully to provide the platoons with the material and assets they need.

6-7. SPECIFIC PREPARATION REQUIREMENTS

These preparation requirements include preparing the evaluators, leaders, units, and soldiers; preparing the site; and arranging for resources.

a. **Prepare the evaluation instruments.** The example evaluation scenario outlined in Section VIII contains tasks grouped as necessary to execute the evaluation. Additional tasks can be added or deleted to complement the general scenario.

(1) Identify the major operations to evaluate. Under each major operation, identify the squad and platoon tasks.

(2) List the selected operations and tasks in the order that they will occur in the scenario. Remember, some operations and tasks will be evaluated more than once for each STX in the scenario.

(3) Organize the selected tasks (STXs) into evaluator packets for each evaluator and echelon of the evaluated unit. Information about each item in the evaluator packets is in Section IV.

(4) Duplicate each of the evaluator packets for each element being evaluated.

b. **Forecast and requisition resources.** Depending on the number of platoons to be evaluated, headquarters forecasts and requisitions training ammunition, batteries, MILES equipment, and other resources. (See Table 6-2.)

NOTE: Several vehicles or squads (simulating a stationary unit) and personnel (guides) will be required to evaluate the task, Perform Passage of Lines. This is in addition to the support requirements listed in Table 6-2.

| AMMUNITION | DODAC | BASIC LOAD | |
|---|----------------------------|--|---------|
| 5.56-mm (blank) | 1305A080 | 150 rounds each rifle | |
| 5.56-mm (blank) | 1305A075 | 400/M249 *600/coaxial machine guns | |
| Caliber .50 | 1305A598 | *200 rounds per M2 machine gun | |
| Hand grenade,(practice) | 1330G818 | 2 per rifleman | |
| Hand grenade fuze (practice) | 1330G878 | 2 per rifleman | |
| ATWESS cartridges | 1370L367 | 4 per Viper/Law, 3 per Dragon, *7 per Bradley | |
| OTHER ITEMS | NUMBER | | |
| Batteries | | | |
| BA 200 (6-volt) (9-volt) | 2 each per vehicle per day | | |
| BA 3090 (9-volt) | 3 each per soldier per day | | |
| MILES EQUIPMENT | PLATOON | CONTROLLERS | OPFOR |
| APC | *4 | | 2 to 14 |
| Caliber .50 system | *4 | | 2 to 14 |
| M19 blank firing adapter (caliber .50) | *4 | | 2 to 14 |
| M16 system | 32 | | 6 to 90 |
| M249 SAW MILES transmitter | 6 | | 2 to 18 |
| Controller guns and keys | | 5 | |
| Small-arms alignment fixture | | 1 | |
| Dragon/Javelin | 3 | | 1 to 9 |
| Viper/AT4 | 6 | | 2 to 18 |
| *These requirements are added when units use mechanized platoons for OPFOR or in support of training. | | | |

Table 6-2. Consolidated support requirements.

c. **Prepare the unit.** The evaluated units must have adequate resources and time to train, evaluate, and retrain collective and individual skills before the evaluation.

(1) Trainers must stress safety at all times. Leaders must instill an awareness of individual safety in all subordinate leaders and soldiers. Soldiers must be constantly alert for and avoid dangerous situations.

(2) Trainers brief the platoon on the ROE. (See ARTEPs 7-20-MTP and 71-2-MTP.)

(3) Trainers brief the platoon on the evaluation control system, its function, and the use of the results. (See Section VI.)

(4) Trainers brief the platoon on the evaluator scoring system. (See Section IV.)

d. **Inspect individual and unit equipment.** The chain of command must check all weapons, radios, and special equipment for serviceability. The unit must zero its MILES equipment. Evaluators check the MILES belts with a controller gun.

e. **Select and prepare the evaluation site.** This involves the following considerations:

(1) **Size.** The training area should have at least 10 to 15 km by 5 to 10 km to accomplish the objectives. If evaluating multiple units at the same time, the trainer must ensure that training areas do not overlap.

(2) **Type of terrain.** Terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objectives. Terrain must not limit the leader to an obvious solution.

(3) **OPFOR locations.** The trainer selects OPFOR locations based on a sound, tactical appreciation of the terrain available, and OPFOR doctrine.

(4) **Administrative site—evaluation headquarters.** The trainer selects an administrative site to stockpile training ammunition and other equipment. It can also serve as a location to debrief evaluators and unit members and as a central location for data collection. The battalion TOC can perform this function.

NOTE: Having units that are knowledgeable of the equipment and in the use of MILES will save time in this phase. (See TC 25-6, TC 25-6-1, TC 25-6-2, TC 25-6-3, and TC 25-6-4.)

Section IV. EVALUATOR REQUIREMENTS, TRAINING, AND SCORING SYSTEM

6-8. GENERAL

Evaluators must know the evaluated unit's mission, organization, equipment, and employment. Evaluators are at least equal in rank of the

unit or subordinate element commander. They should have experience in that specific or similar TOE position.

6-9. EVALUATOR REQUIREMENTS

The minimum requirements for the evaluating team are as follows:

- a. One captain with platoon leader experience (senior evaluator).
- b. One first lieutenant with platoon leader experience (platoon evaluator).
- c. One sergeant first class with platoon sergeant experience (platoon sergeant evaluator).
- d. Three sergeants and or staff sergeants with infantry squad platoon leader experience (squad leader evaluator).
- e. A recorder at the evaluation control headquarters to receive “kill” information, results, and time data from the evaluators.
- f. The OPFOR leaders also provide input for the platoon evaluators.

6-10. EVALUATOR TRAINING

Evaluator training is essential to standardize the evaluation. Evaluators should receive about six hours of classroom instruction. (This requires one officer with knowledge and experience of evaluating and one classroom.) The evaluators then conduct a reconnaissance of the field evaluation area, war-game the refined scenario, and rehearse the evaluation procedures and exercise control system. They must know the T&EO and scoring criteria in their respective areas, and the desired evaluation process to include the control procedures, the use of MILES, and the ROE.

a. **Evaluation design.** Each STX evaluates specific missions or tasks. Evaluators make every effort to support that evaluation. By the same token, evaluators consider those conditions that obstruct an assessment of the unit’s performance.

b. **MILES.** Each evaluator, regardless of position, must know the platoon’s weapons and the MILES equipment. Before each STX, the evaluator must ensure that all MILES equipment is functional.

c. **Evaluation scoring system.** The evaluation scoring system ensures consistent and standardized scoring and data collection. It includes the following elements:

- (1) Rules of engagement. (See Appendix A of ARTEPs 7-20-MTP and 71-2-MTP.)
- (2) Duties and responsibilities. Each evaluator has specific duties and responsibilities. (See Section VI, paragraph 6-18e.)
- (3) Communications system. Evaluators need a single-net radio for control of the exercise. Using the evaluated platoon’s radios is a hazard, as

well as a hindrance, to that unit. The control center must also have communications with the OPFOR to assist in coordination.

(4) Evaluation data collection. Each evaluator must know the data collection plan and his specific responsibilities. Failure to collect data results in inaccurate assessments of a platoon's proficiency.

6-11. EVALUATOR SCORING SYSTEM

The senior evaluator is responsible for preparing the evaluator scoring system and assessing task accomplishment. This evaluation report reflects the overall platoon proficiency. Once complete, the senior evaluator gives all material to the battalion S3 or the battalion commander.

a. **Training and evaluation outline.** The use of the T&EO as an evaluating tool is critical in assessing unit performance. The complete T&EO is copied from Chapter 5 and T, P, or U is used (GO or NO-GO is used for each T&EO subtask). The standards of the T&EO provide information to determine strengths and weaknesses as related to the T&EO task. Failure to perform to all standards of the T&EO indicates the need to retrain that task until all standards can be met. (See Chapter 5.)

b. **Unit proficiency work sheet.** The senior evaluator uses the completed T&EOs to prepare the unit proficiency work sheet. (See Figure 6-1, page 6-8.) The example work sheet includes a task list within a given operation as well as an evaluation of the subunit evaluations and remarks. The unit proficiency work sheet provides the commander with the status of training.

c. **Task summary sheet.** The senior evaluator prepares the task summary sheet (Figure 6-2, page 6-9.), using the completed unit proficiency work sheets and T&EOs as the base. A separate task summary sheet is prepared for each mission evaluated. It identifies the mission and tasks performed as well as the evaluation grade (T, P, U) on each task. The task summary sheet reveals a precise evaluation of the unit and eliminates the ambiguity often caused by the use of generalized narrative strength or weakness statements. Deviations from the scenario and comments by the senior evaluator may be placed as an enclosure to the task summary sheet.

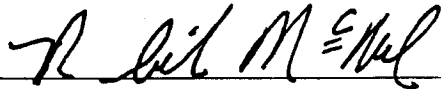
d. **Unit data report.** This report presents demographic information that might affect a unit's performance (for example, new leaders, low strength). (See Figure 6-3, page 6-10.)

e. **Environmental data report.** This report presents weather information so that a comparison can be made of missions conducted under different environmental conditions. (See Figure 6-4, page 6-11.)

NOTE: The unit data report and environmental data report should accompany the unit proficiency work sheet for all tasks.

Figure 6-1. Example T&EO and unit proficiency work sheet.

| TASK SUMMARY SHEET | | | | |
|---|-------------|------------|---|---|
| MISSION : <u>ATTACK</u> | | | | |
| TASK TITLES | T&EO NUMBER | EVALUATION | | |
| | | T | P | U |
| 1. Occupy Assembly Area | 7-3/4-1136 | | ✓ | |
| 2. Develop and Communicate a Plan | 7-3/4-1605 | | ✓ | |
| 3. Prepare for Combat | 7-3/4-1606 | | ✓ | |
| 4. Move Tactically | 7-3/4-1134 | ✓ | | |
| 5. Reconnoiter Area | 7-3/4-1003 | | ✓ | |
| 6. Execute Assault | 7-3/4-1103 | | ✓ | |
| 7. Perform Consolidation and Reorganization | 7-3/4-1607 | | | ✓ |
| 8. Prepare for Combat | 7-3/4-1606 | | ✓ | |
| 9. Move Tactically | 7-3/4-1134 | ✓ | | |

| TASK PERFORMANCE SUMMARY BLOCK | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|---|---------|---|----|---------|---|--|
| | | MISSION SUMMARY | | | | | | |
| | | T | P | U | | | | |
| | | 2 | 6 | 1 | | | | |
| TOTAL TASKS AND STANDARDS EVALUATED | | 9 | | | | | | |
| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES RATING | | <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;">GO</th> <th style="text-align: center;">NO - GO</th> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">✓</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> | | | GO | NO - GO | ✓ | |
| | | GO | NO - GO | | | | | |
| ✓ | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Evaluator's Signature | |  | | | | | | |

NOTE: Evaluators prepare a separate task summary sheet for each mission evaluated. Evaluator's comments may be placed on an enclosure to the task summary sheet.

Figure 6-2. Example task summary sheet.

| UNIT DATA REPORT | | |
|---|---------------------|---|
| 1. UNIT DESIGNATION <u>1st Plt, A Co, 2-505th PIR</u> | | |
| 2. UNIT LEADERS: (Circle most correct answer.) | | |
| | RANK | TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS) |
| Platoon Leader | <u>1LT</u> /2LT/SFC | 1-3 <u>3-6</u> 6-12 12-18 19 or more |
| Platoon Sergeant | <u>SFC</u> /SSG | 1-3 3-6 6-12 12-18 <u>19 or more</u> |
| 1st Squad Leader | <u>SSG</u> /SGT/SP4 | 1-3 3-6 6-12 <u>12-18</u> 19 or more |
| 2d Squad Leader | SSG <u>SGT</u> SP4 | 1-3 3-6 <u>6-12</u> 12-18 19 or more |
| 3d Squad Leader | <u>SSG</u> /SGT/SP4 | 1-3 3-6 6-12 12-18 <u>19 or more</u> |
| 3. UNIT STRENGTH (Excluding leaders): <u>24</u> | | |
| 4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGES (Major items) (List below): | | |
| WEAPONS: | | |
| LIMITED VISIBILITY: <u>1 AN/PVS-5 NVG in maintenance</u> | | |
| RADIOS: | | |
| NAVIGATION EQUIPMENT: | | |
| 5. COMMENTS: | | |
| <u>-Have 4 new Soldiers since last field training.</u> <u>-2d Squad Leader on emergency leave.</u> | | |
| Evaluator's Signature/Date | | <u>R. L. M. E. M.</u> <u>24 Mar 94</u> |

Figure 6-3. Example unit data report.

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA REPORT

STX NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION: #1, AttackDATE/TIME STX STARTED: 181200MAR94DATE/TIME STX ENDED: 182300MAR94

1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle as required.)

Clear Partly Cloudy Cloudy Hazy Raining Snowing Fog Other: _____Temperature: 58°F

2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle as required.)

Dry Wet Ice Snow Other: _____

3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle as required.)

a. Day Nightb. Moon Phase: None 1/4 1/2 3/4 Fullc. Average range of visibility (light): 3 Meters

4. TERRAIN: (Circle as required.)

a. Flat Rolling Mountainous Jungle Desert Swamp Urban Forest
Arctic Other: _____b. Top soil composition: Sandy Rocky Clay Other: _____c. Average range of visibility (terrain): Day - 20-50 Meters

5. REMARKS:

Evaluator's Signature/Date

R. L. McNeil
18 Mar 94

Figure 6-4. Example environmental data report.

f. **Casualty report.** The casualty report presents information that reflects one aspect of a unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR. (See Figure 6-5.)

g. **OPORD and FRAGO.** The senior evaluator uses the OPORD to begin the evaluation scenario. He uses the FRAGO to continue the exercise. (See Section VIII.)

| CASUALTY REPORT PLATOON EVALUATION | | | | | | |
|---|----------|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|
| UNIT: <u>1st Plt, A Co, 2-505th PIR</u> | | | | | | |
| MISSION/TASK NUMBER OR TITLE | FRIENDLY | | | OPFOR | | |
| | WIA | KIA | VEH | WIA | KIA | VEH |
| 1. <u>Occupy Assembly Area</u> | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 2. <u>Develop and Communicate a Plan</u> | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 3. <u>Move Tactically</u> | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 4. <u>Recon Area</u> | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 5. <u>Execute Assault</u> | 3 | 1 | - | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| 6. <u>Perform Consolidation/Reorganization</u> | 1 | - | - | 1 | 1 | - |
| 7. <u>Prepare for Combat</u> | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 8. <u>Move Tactically</u> | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 9. | | | | | | |
| 10. | | | | | | |
| 11. | | | | | | |
| 12. | | | | | | |
| 13. | | | | | | |
| 14. | | | | | | |
| 15. | | | | | | |
| COMMENTS: <div style="text-align: right;"> 25 MAR 94 <i>R. L. M. C. M.</i> Evaluator's Signature/Date </div> | | | | | | |

Figure 6-5. Example casualty report.

Section V. OPPOSING FORCE SELECTION AND TRAINING

6-12. GENERAL

The selection and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influences the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. Each platoon should face an opponent as consistent as possible in strength, weapons, uniforms, equipment, and OPFOR tactical skill. In addition, the OPFOR with a communications link assists the evaluators by providing subjective and objective feedback.

6-13. SELECTION

Any qualified skill level 1 or 2 soldier can serve as OPFOR. The OPFOR should be a cohesive unit (up to platoon strength) under the control of their regular leader or commander. The OPFOR should also be evaluated IAW its task, conditions, and standards for each T&EO.

6-14. TRAINING

The OPFOR must receive thorough training in five major areas:

- a. Threat small-unit tactics.
- b. Rules of engagement. (See Appendix A of ARTEPs 7-20-MTP or 71-2-MTP.)
- c. How to install and operate the MILES devices for their weapons.
- d. Threat weapons and equipment (or replicas) whenever possible.
- e. Training scenario. For each scenario, they must know their mission, evaluation objective and standard, scenario, and all OPFOR control measures.

6-15. OPPOSING FORCE STRENGTH

OPFOR strength depends on the unit and its missions and tasks to be evaluated.

a. **Offense.** The platoon should outnumber the OPFOR 3 to 1 if a platoon attack is to have a good chance of success. The OPFOR should not be so weak that they are quickly overcome. The OPFOR should have weapons capable of defeating any of the platoon's assets. The OPFOR should be strong enough to challenge the platoon; but, a challenge that the platoon can overcome if they employ proper tactics.

b. **Defense.** The OPFOR at a minimum should have a 3 to 1 superiority when attacking the platoon. Anything less will not effectively challenge the platoon. The OPFOR should have weapons and equipment representative of the threat they are portraying and conduct their attack according to threat doctrine.

Section VI. CONDUCT OF THE EVALUATION

6-16. GENERAL

The evaluation consists of preevaluation, evaluation, and postevaluation activities, each requiring preparation and coordination.

6-17. PREEVALUATION ACTIVITIES

The evaluators must make a reconnaissance of the evaluation area to ensure that they know the unit boundary, the location of OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the area of operations. While the platoon is conducting its preevaluation activities (for example, installing and troubleshooting MILES equipment, conducting inspections), the OPFOR is also preparing their plans and positions. In the example scenario, the senior evaluator issues the platoon a company WO and marching order to move to an assembly area. When the platoon occupies the assembly area, the company OPORD is issued. The platoon leader issues his OPORD and allots time for issuing squad orders.

6-18. EVALUATION ACTIVITIES

The battalion conducting the external evaluation has the option of evaluating one platoon at a time (consecutively) or a number of platoons concurrently.

a. **Role of the commander.** The role of the company commander varies with the method of evaluation. Ideally, he is with the senior evaluator and provides a command radio link with his platoons. If the need arises, the platoon evaluator or senior evaluator (in the role of company commander) may provide the command net link, freeing the company commander to evaluate other platoons.

b. **Radio requirements.** In addition to the company command net and the platoon command net, the senior evaluator controls the exercise through his net. Fire support requirements go through the fire direction control net (see Section IX). CSS requirements go through the administrative/logistics net. The evaluation control headquarters is a stationary or mobile command post to exercise control and to portray realistic time-distance factors between the company CP and the platoon.

c. **Beginning the first STX.** Once the senior evaluator or company commander issues the company OPORD, the platoon leader executes the missions and tasks in the first STX of the scenario and adheres to time constraints. From this point on, all successive STXs begin with a company team FRAGO or OPORD.

d. **Ending the STX.** The senior evaluator should end an STX when the platoon completes the mission and tasks in a specific STX, or suffers casualties and or damage to the extent that the platoon is combat ineffective. The evaluator must record the reasons for the termination in the margin of the evaluator's T&EO work sheet and report the action to the evaluation control headquarters. In the example evaluation scenario (Section VIII), the completion of each mission and task is "prepare for continuing operations; perform sustaining operations." During this period, the senior evaluator or commander may issue the company FRAGO or OPORD for the next STX. In addition, if there are casualties and damaged or destroyed equipment, the senior evaluator directs the platoon to remain in position while "replacements" (personnel and equipment designated as killed or destroyed) are sent forward to reconstitute the unit. The evaluators perform the following actions:

(1) Inspect all MILES equipment, record kill codes, and then reset. Replace any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment.

(2) Report performance information from the T&EOs to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(3) Conduct an AAR (Section VII) at the end of each STX. The senior evaluator or commander directs the platoon to continue its operations with a company FRAGO or OPORD for the next STX.

e. **Evaluators' duties and responsibilities.** The evaluators perform the following duties:

(1) Complete each T&EO worksheet.

(2) Collect data for the reports, supplied in the evaluator packets.

(3) Ensure that all MILES equipment is functional.

(4) Report kills (vehicles, soldiers).

(5) Report weapons firing. Together with reporting kills, this is the best method for determining direct-fire effectiveness. For example, an overwatching platoon is not providing effective direct-fire support if that fire has no effect on the OPFOR.

(6) Enforce the ROE.

(7) Observe critical tactical events. Evaluators record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome. All reports should have the event time to help recreate the action during the AAR.

(8) Record routes of travel and platoon locations.

(9) Use a tape recorder to record communications, if available. This allows units to listen to the command and control activities.

(10) ENFORCE SAFETY.

(11) Control the platoon evaluation in two ways: first, through the control measures in paragraphs 3 and 5 of the OPORD or FRAGO, and

second, through the company commander or the senior evaluator on the company command net. The platoon evaluators do not control, but merely accompany the unit as observers. Only the senior evaluator has direct contact with the platoon leader; all other evaluators do not speak to, aid, give advice, point out positions, or in any way influence the platoon's performance except in a safety emergency. Evaluators are neutral and must remain so throughout the evaluation.

6-19. POSTEVALUATION ACTIVITIES

At the end of the evaluation, the platoon moves to an assembly area and takes the following actions:

- a. The senior evaluator debriefs subordinate evaluators and compiles all data (evaluator packets).
- b. The senior evaluator, using the evaluator scoring system, completes the unit proficiency work sheets and the task summary sheets to reflect overall unit performance.
- c. All completed evaluator's packets go through control headquarters for recording and analysis.
- d. The senior evaluator conducts an AAR of the platoon's performance.
- e. Each evaluator conducts an AAR of his element's performance.

Section VII. AFTER-ACTION REVIEW

6-20. GENERAL

At the end of the evaluation, feedback to the platoon increases and reinforces learning. An AAR is not a critique (a recounting of the tasks the unit did well or did poorly). In an AAR, the leaders and soldiers of the evaluated unit are active participants in the process.

- a. Because all members participate, each member becomes a source of feedback information. This provides a richer "data base" from which key points can be drawn. For example, a leader's assessment of the situation and the basis for his decisions are known only to him. The AAR leader tries to get this information so that it becomes an important part of the discussion and forms the context for discussing alternative courses of action.

- b. Figure 6-6 is an example format that evaluators may use as a working paper for making detailed observations during an exercise.

| DETAILED OBSERVATION | |
|--|---|
| *TRAINING EXERCISE TITLE AND ARTEP MISSION/OPFOR ACTION: | |
| DESCRIPTION: | StX #1, Attack Task: Perform Consolidation and Reorganization |
| TIME: | 2130 |
| OBSERVATIONS (player action): | Several leader and critical tasks were not performed to standard. |
| COMMENTS/CONCLUSIONS: | An immediate OPFOR counterattack caught the platoon unprepared. Platoon leadership took too long to implement consolidation/reorganization. |
| RECOMMENDATIONS: | Begin consolidation and reorganization immediately. Ensure all leaders know their tasks. |
| COMMENTS FOR THE AAR: | - As stated above. |
| *Evaluators use this format to record comments for each event. | |

Figure 6-6. Example of AAR working paper.

6-21. PREPARATION

AAR preparation involves six steps.

a. **Review training objectives, orders, and doctrine.** Training objectives, or T&EOs, focus the discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs in the exercise implement these objectives. The evaluator should know the objectives, FRAGOs, and OPORDs so that he can note orders given by the leaders of the evaluated unit and subunits that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

b. **Observe the exercise.** This is an active process, and the emphasis is on monitoring the actions that make the difference between unit success and failure. The evaluator is where he can observe critical events. Examples of critical events include—

- (1) Order briefings.
- (2) React to contact.
- (3) Major command and control activities (for example, OPORDs, FRAGOs, orientation, control and communications during movement).
- (4) Acquisition of important intelligence.
- (5) Deceptive maneuvers.
- (6) Occupation or control of major terrain features.
- (7) Neutralization or destruction of major OPFOR capabilities, elements, or weapons.

c. **Select the site and assemble the participants.** If possible, the AAR is held where the majority of the action occurred (normally, where the OPFOR was positioned). Most often the OPFOR or unit objective locations are suitable for assembling the players and conducting the AAR.

d. **Debrief the evaluators.** While the units are moving to the AAR site, the evaluators brief the senior evaluator. This includes a detailed description of the exercise's major tactical events in chronological order.

e. **Organize and rehearse.** After the senior evaluator understands what happened during the exercise, he should review the critical events and rank them in terms of their relevance to the training objectives and their contribution to the exercise outcome. Once the notes are ready, he prepares the training aids. Rehearsals are a must to conduct a good AAR.

6-22. CONDUCT OF THE AFTER-ACTION REVIEW

(See TC 25-20, Chapter 4.) The AARs ensure the active participation of all members of the unit, build esprit, and aid in learning. Trainers gather and organize the entire unit, restate the mission and commander's intent, then discuss each event and engagement (using maps, map boards, terrain boards, sand tables, and or other training aids). The OPFOR personnel should describe friendly actions from their perspective, both good and bad. Trainers summarize the major points and recommend subsequent training to correct weaknesses and sustain strengths. The following is an example AAR summary checklist:

- a. Organize the participants.
- b. Restate the mission and commander's intent.
- c. OPFOR mission and intent.
- d. Guide a discussion of major tactical events in the order of occurrence.

- (1) What happened.
 - (2) How it happened.
 - (3) Why it happened.
- e. Discuss alternate courses of action.
 - f. Discuss leader errors but avoid emphasis on negativism.
 - g. Use terrain boards, maps, map boards, schematics, and sand tables to assist.
 - h. Summarize teaching points in terms of training objectives.

Section VIII. EVALUATION SCENARIO DEVELOPMENT

6-23. GENERAL

The implementing headquarters develop realistic time frames for each major operation or task. They base the time on the intensity and speed of the battlefield and the size of the evaluation site. (For an example of a platoon evaluation scenario, see Figure 6-7, page 6-20.) The STXs may be arranged in any order as long as they follow a tactical scenario. (For an example of a platoon scenario, see Figure 6-8, page 6-21.)

6-24. REACTION-TYPE MISSIONS

At least one or more of the STX(s) may contain a “reaction-type” mission. This mission is used to evaluate the platoon leader’s ability to exercise tactical initiative and sound judgment. For example, the platoon leader may be given a mission to move rapidly to a key road intersection and to establish a hasty defense within a specified time. (For an example of a battalion OPOD, see Figure 6-9, page 6-22.) This reaction-type mission requires the platoon leader to plan and issue a FRAGO while on the move and to execute it immediately on reaching the objective area.

6-25. TERRAIN

The field evaluation site should be large enough to allow the platoon to demonstrate appropriate movement techniques before contact. The maximum effective range of OPFOR MILES must be considered.

| EXAMPLE EVALUATION SCENARIO (PLATOON EVALUATION)—TIME ALLOCATION | | |
|---|--|--|
| EVENT ACTION | ESTIMATED TIME | PROPOSED TIME FRAME |
| STX 1 1. Conduct preevaluation activities (for example; install, align, and troubleshoot MILES equipment; conduct inspections; draw equipment). 2. Occupy Assembly Area. 3. Receive Company OPORD . 4. Prepare for Combat . 5. Perform Passage of Lines. 6. Move Tactically. 7. Cross Water Obstacle . 8. Assault. 9. Consolidate and Reorganize Intermediate AAR | Before start time 1 hour DAY 1 1 hour 4 hours 2 hours 3 hours DAY 2 1 hour 1 hour 1 hour | 1700 1800 1900 2300 0100 0400 0500 0600 |
| STX 2 10. Receive Company FRAGO 11. Perform Helicopter Movement 12. Occupy Objective Rally Point 13. Perform Area Ambush Intermediate AAR 14. Receive Company FRAGO Review 15. Move Tactically 16. Cross Danger Area 17. Occupy Patrol Base Move to AAR Site 18. After-Action Review 19. End of Exercise | 2 hours 2 hours 1 hour 10 hours 2 hours 1 hour 1 hour DAY 3 3 hour 1 hours 2 hours | 0700 0900 1100 1200 2200 2400 0100 0200 0500 0600 0800 |
| Total Time 39 hours | | |

Figure 6-7. Example platoon evaluation scenario.

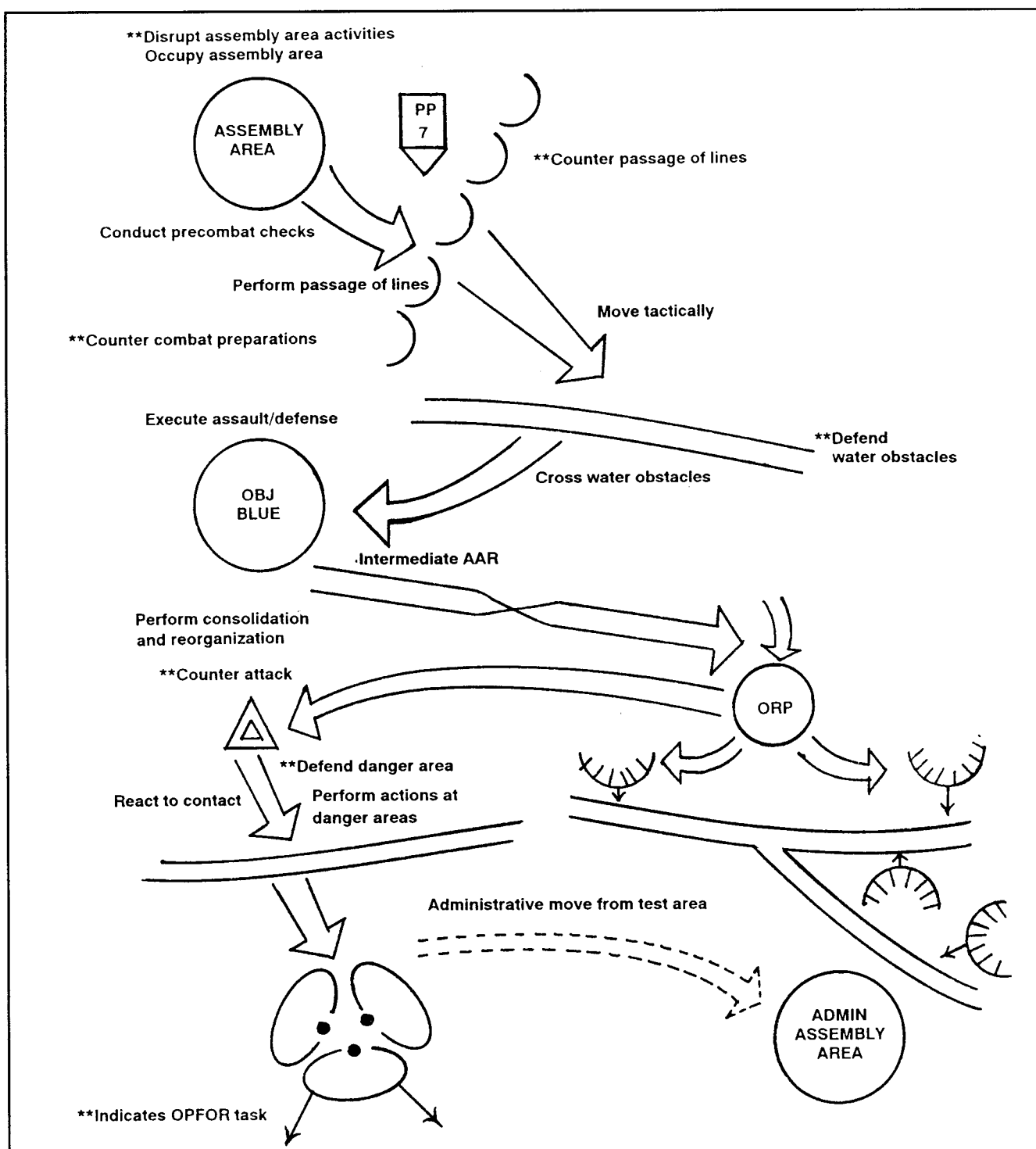


Figure 6-8. Example platoon scenario.

| | |
|---|--|
| <u>(Classification)</u> | Copy ____ of ____ copies ____ Company, ____ Infantry <u>(Unit Location)</u> <u>(Date/time Group)</u> <u>(Message Reference Number)</u> |
| OPERATION ORDER _____ Reference : Map, Series _____ Time Zone used Throughout the Order: _____ | |
| Task Organization: _____ Platoon (evaluated) Platoon _____ Platoon 60-mm Section _____ Antiarmor Section | |
| 1. SITUATION a. Enemy Forces. ANNEX A (Intelligence Overlay [prepared by battalion S2]). (1) The company is opposed by elements of the Venceremos Company of the Rojas Brigade at about 60 percent strength. Within our zone, we have a platoon-size element defending in the vicinity of (____). The enemy has crew-served automatic weapons and may call on company mortars for support. (2) Current indications are the enemy is regrouping to initiate small-unit offensive actions in the area. His most likely course of action is to move to the (direction) to link up with elements of the parent unit. b. Friendly Forces. (1) (____) Infantry attacks at (date/time group) hours to seize Objective ALPHA (grid). The intent is to prevent the enemy element from moving (direction) to link up with other enemy units. (2) Company (____) on our (left, right) makes the main attack at (date/time group) hours to seize Objective RED (grid) in order to establish blocking positions to stop the enemy's movement to the (direction). (3) Company (____) on our (left, right) makes a supporting attack at (date/time group) hours to seize Objective GREEN destroy all enemy elements in its zone. | |
| <u>(Classification)</u> | |

Figure 6-9. Example of a company OPORD.

(Classification)**2. MISSION**

Company () seizes Objective BLUE (grid) at (date/time) hours in order to prevent the enemy from engaging Company () (main attack) from Objective BLUE.

3. EXECUTION

a. **Concept of Operation.** ANNEX B (Operations Overlay). (This should include those items in Task 7-3/4-1605, Develop and Communicate a Plan, paragraph 17. These should be written out when possible and not just placed on an overlay.)

(1) Maneuver. () Platoon establishes a defense in its zone, NLT (date/time) hours, to destroy small enemy elements moving or exfiltrating to the (direction), from the vicinity of Objective BLUE. This defense supports the attack on Objective BLUE by completing destruction of any enemy that may escape. (Evaluated) Platoon conducts the company main attack at (hours) to seize Objective BLUE to destroy the enemy or force them to withdraw into () Platoon's defense. () Platoon supports the attack of the (Evaluated) Platoon on Objective BLUE to suppress enemy fires and isolate the objective. On seizure of Objective BLUE, (Evaluated) Platoon and () Platoon will defend in sector to destroy the enemy elements withdrawing to avoid () Company's attack.

(2) Fire support.

(a) Priority of fires.

- Initially to (Evaluated) Platoon.
- Upon seizure of Objective BLUE, priority shifts to (Defensive) Platoon.

(b) Priority targets.

- 60-mm priority target initially AA4031.
- On initiation of assault on Objective BLUE, priority shifts to target AA4027 to isolate the objective.
- Upon seizure of Objective BLUE, priority shifts to target AA4025.

b. **Tasks to maneuver units.**

(1) () Platoon. Destroy enemy elements moving to the (direction), NLT (date/time).

(Classification)

Figure 6-9. Example of a company OPORD(continued).

(Classification)

(2) (Evaluated) Platoon. Consolidate and defend in sector to destroy enemy elements following the seizure of Objective BLUE.

(3) (—) Platoon.

(a) Be prepared to assault Objective BLUE, on order.

(b) Consolidate and defend in sector to destroy enemy elements following the seizure of Objective BLUE.

c. Tasks to combat support units.

(1) 60-mm Section. GS, initially in the vicinity of CP 7, priority of fires to the (Evaluated) Platoon. Move with the (Supporting) Platoon. On order, priority of fires to the (Defensive) Platoon.

(2) Antiarmor Section. Attached to the (Supporting) Platoon.

d. Coordinating Instructions:

(1) (Defensive) Platoon reports defense established and locations.

(2) Platoon reports the seizure of all objectives.

(3) Platoon reports the consolidation and establishment of the defense.

(4) Order of march from the assembly area to the objective: defense platoon, evaluated

4. SERVICE SUPPORT

a. **General.** Company trains collocated with the battalion combat trains in the vicinity of (grid). Supply distribution at the company CP.

b. Materiel and Services.

(1) Class I: Ration cycle MRE-MRE-MRE.

(2) Class V: Pick up basic load at company CP, NLT (date/time).

(3) Medical: Company casualty collection point is _____.

(4) EPW: EPW collection point is _____.

(Classification)

Figure 6-9. Example of a company OPOD(continued).

(Classification)**5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.**

a. **Command.** Company command group initially follows the (Evaluated) Platoon.

b. **Signal.**

(1) Radio-listening silence is in effect until contact is made.

(2) SOI _____ is in effect.

Acknowledge.

JONES
Commanding

OFFICIAL:

SMITH

S3

Annexes: A - Intelligence Overlay

B - Operations Overlay

C - Fire Support Overlay

(Classification)

Figure 6-9. Example of a company OPORD (continued).

Section IX. INDIRECT-FIRE SIMULATION

6-26. GENERAL

Indirect-fire weapons influence battles; therefore, they need to be integrated into the platoon evaluation. Until an indirect-fire simulator for MILES is fielded, the fire marker control system outlined in Appendix B of TC 25-6 is recommended. However, because of the resources (personnel, radios, and vehicles) required, this method may be difficult for a battalion to support.

6-27. EVALUATION CONTROL HEADQUARTERS METHOD

If the unit cannot support the fire marker control, another method is to direct calls for fire to a fire support section at the evaluation control headquarters. This section simulates the tactical fire direction center. The evaluation control headquarters then relays the data to the evaluators. The evaluators

mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess casualties. Table 6-3, describes the bursting radius and sheaf sizes of various indirect-fire weapons.

| BURSTING RADIUS AND SHEAF SIZES OF INDIRECT-FIRE WEAPONS | | |
|---|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| WEAPON | BURST RADIUS METERS | SHEAF SIZE METERS |
| 60-mm mortar | 28 | 90 x 30 |
| 81-mm mortar | 35 | 140 x 35 |
| 105-mm howitzer | 30 | 200 x 150 |
| 155-mm howitzer | 40 | 300 x 200 |

Table 6-3. Bursting radius.

6-28. REALISM

Fire support to the evaluated platoon should be the same as can be expected in combat. Because of the OPFOR tendency to mass artillery and control fire at higher echelons, OPFOR platoons have problems calling for and adjusting fire. OPFOR companies can expect support from the battalion's mortar sections when they are not firing for the regimental artillery commander.

6-29. SIMULATION WITHOUT OPFOR

Reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration on the platoon evaluation. The task, React to Indirect Fire assesses the platoon's ability in this area and can be simulated without an OPFOR call for fire. The platoon evaluator simply ignites artillery simulators and observes the platoon's reaction.

APPENDIX A

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

STP 21-1-SMCT, Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks,
Skill Level 1 (1 October 1990)

SKILL LEVEL 1

1. 031-503-1004 Put on, Wear, Remove, and Store Your M17-Series Protective Mask With Hood
2. 031-503-1005 Maintain Your M17-Series Protective Mask With Hood
3. 031-503-1012 Put on, Wear, Remove, and Store Your M24 or M25 Series Protective Mask With Hood
4. 031-503-1011 Maintain Your M24 or M25-Series Protective Mask With Hood
5. 031-503-1007 Decontaminate Your Skin and Personal Equipment
6. 031-503-1015 Put on and Wear MOPP Gear
7. 031-503-1019 Recognize and React to Chemical or Biological Hazard
8. 031-503-1018 React to Nuclear Hazard
9. 031-503-1014 Use M8 Detector Paper to Identify Chemical Agent
10. 031-503-1020 Use M9 Detector Paper to Detect Chemical Agent
11. 031-503-1023 Exchange MOPP Gear
12. 031-503-1024 Replace Canister on Your M40-Series Protective Mask
13. 031-503-1025 Put on, Wear, Remove, and Store Your M40 Protective Mask With Hood
14. 031-503-1026 Maintain Your M40-Series Protective Mask With Hood
15. 031-503-1030 Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Operation
16. 031-503-1031 Put the Chemical Agent Monitor Into Operation

17. 031-503-1032 Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Movement or Storage
18. 031-503-1006 Drink From Canteen While Wearing Your Protective Mask
19. 031-503-1008 Use the Latrine While Wearing MOPP4
20. 051-191-1361 Camouflage Yourself and Your Individual Equipment
21. 051-191-1362 Camouflage Equipment
22. 051-192-1022 Locate Mines by Probing
23. 051-202-1363 Camouflage Your Defensive Position
24. 071-331-0803 Report Enemy Information
25. 071-326-0512 Estimate Range
26. 071-329-1000 Identify Topographic Symbols on a Military Map
27. 071-329-1001 Identify Terrain Features on a Map
28. 071-329-1012 Orient a Map to the Ground by Map-Terrain Association
29. 071-329-1002 Determine the Grid Coordinates of a Point on a Military Map
30. 071-329-1005 Determine a Location on the Ground by Terrain Association
31. 071-329-1003 Determine a Magnetic Azimuth Using a Lensatic Compass
32. 071-329-1018 Determine Direction Using Field-Expedient Methods
33. 071-329-1008 Measure Distance on a Map
34. 071-311-2025 Maintain an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
35. 071-311-2026 Perform a Function Check on an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
36. 071-311-2027 Load an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
37. 071-311-2028 Unload an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
38. 071-311-2029 Correct Malfunctions of an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
39. 071-311-2004 Zero an M16A1 Rifle

- 40. 071-311-2030 Zero an M16A2 Rifle
- 41. 071-311-2007 Engage Targets With an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
- 42. 071-054-0001 Prepare an M136 Launcher for Firing
- 43. 071-054-0002 Restore an M136 Launcher to Carrying Configuration
- 44. 071-054-0003 Perform Misfire Procedures on an M136 Launcher
- 45. 071-054-0004 Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher
- 46. 071-311-2126 Perform a Function Check on an M203 Grenade Launcher
- 47. 071-311-2127 Load an M203 Grenade Launcher
- 48. 071-311-2128 Unload an M203 Grenade Launcher
- 49. 071-311-2129 Correct Malfunctions of an M203 Grenade Launcher
- 50. 071-311-2130 Engage Targets With an M203 Grenade Launcher
- 51. 071-312-3026 Perform a Function Check on an M60 Machine Gun
- 52. 071-312-3027 Load an M60 Machine Gun
- 53. 071-312-3028 Unload an M60 Machine Gun
- 54. 071-312-3029 Correct Malfunctions of an M60 Machine Gun
- 55. 071-312-3031 Engage Targets With an M60 Machine Gun
- 56. 071-318-2210 Prepare an M72A2/A3 Light Antitank Weapon for Firing
- 57. 071-318-2211 Restore an M72A2/A3 Light Antitank Weapon to Carrying Configuration
- 58. 071-318-2202 Engage Targets with an M72A2/A3 Light Antitank Weapon
- 59. 071-318-2203 Perform Misfire Procedures on an M72A2/A3 Light Antitank Weapon
- 60. 071-325-4401 Perform Safety Checks on Hand Grenades
- 61. 071-325-4407 Employ Hand Grenades
- 62. 071-325-4425 Employ an M18A1 Claymore Mine
- 63. 071-325-4426 Recover an M18A1 Claymore Mine

- 64. 071-326-0502 Move Under Direct Fire
- 65. 071-326-0503 Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)
- 66. 071-326-0510 React to Indirect Fire While Dismounted
- 67. 071-326-0511 React to Flares
- 68. 071-326-0513 Select Temporary Fighting Positions
- 69. 071-331-0852 Clear a Field of Fire
- 70. 071-326-5703 Construct an Individual Fighting Position
- 71. 071-331-0815 Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline
- 72. 071-331-0804 Perform Surveillance Without the Aid of Electronic Devices
- 73. 071-331-0801 Use Challenge and Password
- 74. 081-831-1043 Practice Preventive Medicine
- 75. 081-831-1000 Evaluate a Casualty
- 76. 081-831-1030 Administer Nerve Agent Antidote to Self (Self-Aid)
- 77. 081-831-1031 Administer First Aid to a Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid)
- 78. 081-831-1003 Clear an Object from the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
- 79. 081-831-1042 Perform Mouth-to-Mouth Resuscitation
- 80. 081-831-1016 Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing
- 81. 081-831-1017 Put on a Tourniquet
- 82. 081-831-1025 Apply a Dressing to an Open Abdominal Wound
- 83. 081-831-1026 Apply a Dressing to an Open Chest Wound
- 84. 081-831-1033 Apply a Dressing to an Open Head Wound
- 85. 081-831-1005 Prevent Shock
- 86. 081-831-1034 Splint a Suspected Fracture
- 87. 081-831-1007 Give First Aid for Burns
- 88. 081-831-1008 Give First Aid for Heat Injuries
- 89. 081-831-1009 Give First Aid for Frostbite

- 90. 081-831-1040 Transport a Casualty Using a One-Man Carry
- 91. 081-831-1041 Transport a Casualty Using a Two-Man Carry or an Improvised Litter
- 92. 101-515-1900 Perform Search, Recovery, Evacuation and/or Burial of Remains
- 93. 113-571-1016 Send a Radio Message
- 94. 181-906-1505 Conduct Combat Operations According to the Law of War
- 95. 441-091-1101 Perform Search and Scan Procedures
- 96. 441-091-1102 Engage Hostile Aircraft with Small Arms
- 97. 878-920-1002 Recognize Friendly and Threat Armored Vehicles and Aircraft
- 98. 071-329-1006 Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted
- 99. 031-503-1028 Put on, Wear, Remove, and Store Your M42 Protective Mask with Hood
- 100. 031-503-1029 Maintain Your M42 Protective Mask with Hood
- 101. 031-507-2006 Conduct Hasty Decontamination
- 102. 051-192-1003 Install the M16A1 Antipersonnel Mine
- 103. 051-192-1021 Locate Mines by Visual Means
- 104. 051-192-1104 Remove the M16A1 Antipersonnel Mine
- 105. 051-192-1117 Install the M21 Antitank Mine
- 106. 051-192-1118 Remove the M21 Antitank Mine
- 107. 051-195-1004 Install Pickets, Make Barbed Wire Ties and Install Concertina
- 108. 071-002-0002 Perform a Function Check on a Caliber .45 Pistol
- 109. 071-002-0003 Correct Malfunctions of a Caliber .45 Pistol
- 110. 071-002-0004 Load a Caliber .45 Pistol
- 111. 071-004-0002 Perform a Function Check on an M49 Pistol
- 112. 071-004-0004 Unload an M9 Pistol
- 113. 071-004-0005 Correct Malfunctions of an M9 Pistol

- 114. 071-004-0006 Engage Targets with an M9 Pistol
- 115. 071-008-0001 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 on an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
- 116. 071-008-0002 Dismount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 from an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
- 117. 071-010-0001 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 to an M249 Machine Gun
- 118. 071-010-0002 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 on an M249 Machine Gun
- 119. 071-010-0003 Dismount a Night vision Sight AN/PVS-4 from an M249 Machine Gun
- 120. 071-010-0007 Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun Using a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4
- 121. 071-020-0001 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 on an M60 Machine Gun
- 122. 071-020-0002 Dismount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 from an M60 Machine Gun
- 123. 071-020-0006 Mount an M60 Machine Gun on an M122 Tripod
- 124. 071-020-0007 Dismount an M60 Machine Gun from an M122 Tripod
- 125. 071-022-0010 Mount a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun on an M3 Tripod
- 126. 071-022-0011 Dismount a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun from an M3 Tripod
- 127. 071-022-0012 Mount a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun on a Vehicle
- 128. 071-022-0013 Dismount a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun from a Vehicle
- 129. 071-022-0014 Construct a Fighting Position for a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
- 130. 071-030-0007 Perform a Function Check on an MK19 Machine Gun
- 131. 071-030-0009 Mount an MK19 Machine Gun on a Vehicle
- 132. 071-030-0010 Dismount an MK19 Machine Gun from a Vehicle

- 133. 071-030-0011 Mount an MK19 Machine Gun on an M3 Tripod
- 134. 071-030-0012 Dismount an MK19 Machine from an M3 Tripod
- 135. 071-030-0013 Construct a Fighting Position for an MK19 Machine Gun
- 136. 071-032-0001 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 on an M203 Grenade Launcher
- 137. 071-032-0002 Dismount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 from an M203 Grenade Launcher
- 138. 071-034-0001 Load an M243 or M259 Smoke Grenade Launcher
- 139. 071-034-0002 Unload an M243 or M259 Smoke Grenade Launcher
- 140. 071-034-0003 Perform Misfire Procedures on an M243 or M259 Smoke Grenade Launcher
- 141. 071-034-0004 Fire an M243 or M259 Smoke Grenade Launcher
- 142. 071-034-0007 Maintain an M243 or M259 Smoke Grenade Launcher
- 143. 071-070-0001 Maintain an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
- 144. 071-070-0002 Perform a Function Check on an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
- 145. 071-070-0003 Load an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
- 146. 071-070-0004 Unload an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
- 147. 071-070-0005 Perform Misfire Procedures on an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
- 148. 071-070-0006 Prepare an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher for Firing
- 149. 071-070-0007 Restore an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher to Carrying Configuration
- 150. 071-070-0008 Engage Targets with an M202A1 Multishot Rocket Launcher
- 151. 071-200-0002 Tow a Tracked Vehicle
- 152. 071-212-0001 Maintain the Air Cleaner on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 153. 071-212-0002 Maintain the Electrical system on an M113-Series Vehicle

- 154. 071-212-0003 Maintain the Brake System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 155. 071-212-0004 Maintain the Cooling System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 156. 071-212-0005 Maintain the Engine on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 157. 071-212-0006 Maintain the Fuel System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 158. 071-212-0007 Maintain the Steering System on an on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 159. 071-212-0008 Maintain the Transmission System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 160. 071-212-0009 Maintain the Personnel Heater on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 161. 071-212-0010 Maintain the Fire Suppression System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 162. 071-212-0011 Maintain the Exhaust System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 163. 071-212-0012 Maintain the Bilge System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 164. 071-212-0013 Maintain the Hydraulic System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 165. 071-212-0014 Maintain the Track and Suspension System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 166. 071-212-0015 Maintain the Hull on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 167. 071-212-0016 Prepare an M113-Series Vehicle for Water Operation
- 168. 071-212-0017 Maintain the Gas Particulate System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 169. 071-212-0018 Operate the Gas Particulate System on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 170. 071-212-0019 Operate the M19 on an M113-Series Vehicle
- 171. 071-212-0020 Start an M113-Series Vehicle Using Auxiliary Power

- 172. 071-212-0021 Drive an M113-Series Vehicle
- 173. 071-311-3002 Engage Targets with a Caliber .45 Pistol
- 174. 071-312-4026 Perform a Function Check on an M249 Machine Gun
- 175. 071-312-4028 Unload an M249 Machine Gun
- 176. 071-312-4029 Correct Malfunctions of an M249 Machine Gun
- 177. 071-312-4032 Prepare a Range Card for an M249 Machine Gun
- 178. 071-315-0031 Maintain Night Vision Goggles AN/PVS-5
- 179. 071-315-0090 Maintain a Thermal Viewer AN/PAS-7
- 180. 071-326-0541 Perform Movement Techniques During MOUT
- 181. 071-326-0542 Enter a Building During MOUT
- 182. 071-326-0550 Prepare Positions for Individual and Crew-Served Weapons During MOUT
- 183. 071-326-0557 Select Hasty Firing Positions During MOUT
- 184. 071-326-0600 Use Visual Signalling Techniques While Dismounted
- 185. 071-329-1009 Convert Azimuths
- 186. 071-329-1011 Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass
- 187. 071-331-0001 Perform as a Member of a Patrol
- 188. 071-410-0001 Perform Self-Extraction from a Minefield
- 189. 071-510-0002 Compute Back Azimuths
- 190. 071-600-0001 Destroy Supplies and Equipment
- 191. 071-710-0001 Maintain a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4
- 192. 071-710-0008 Operate a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-7
- 193. 071-710-0009 Maintain a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-7
- 194. 071-730-0001 Emplace Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
- 195. 071-730-0002 Recover Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
- 196. 071-810-0003 Construct a Field-Expedient Antenna
- 197. 071-810-0004 Maintain Intercommunications Set AN/VIC-1 on a Tracked Vehicle (Includes FM Radio)
- 198. 071-820-0001 Operate Telephone Set TA-1/PT

- 199. 071-820-0002 Install Telephone Set TA-1/PT
- 200. 071-820-0003 Install Communications Wire Lines
- 201. 071-820-0004 Recover Communications Wire Lines
- 202. 113-622-2011 Operate Intercommunications Set AN/VIC-1 on a Tracked Vehicle (Includes FM Radio)
- 203. 113-571-1004 Operate in Radio Nets
- 204. 113-572-4008 Transmit a Voice United States Message Text Format (USMTF) Message
- 205. 113-572-5005 Receive a Voice United States Message Text Format (USMTF) Message
- 206. 113-572-6006 Read a United States Message Text Format (USMTF) Message
- 207. 113-573-4003 Encode and Decode Messages Using KTC 600* Tactical Operations Code
- 208. 113-573-4006 Use the KTC 1400* Numerical Cipher/Authentication System
- 209. 113-573-6001 Recognize Electronic Countermeasures (EMC) and Implement Electronic Counter Countermeasures (ECCM)
- 210. 113-573-7017 Prepare/Submit Operator's (MIJI) Report.
- 211. 113-573-8006 Use an Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)
- 212. 113-587-1064 Prepare SINCGARS (Manpack) for Operation
- 213. 113-587-2059 Operate Radio Set AN/PRC-77 with TSEC/KY-57
- 214. 113-587-2061 Operate Radio Set AN/VRC-64 or AN/GRC-160 with TSEC/KY-57
- 215. 113-587-2064 Operate Radio Set AN/VRC-12 Series with TSEC/KY-57
- 216. 113-587-2070 Operate Secure SINCGARS Single Channel (SC)
- 217. 113-587-2071 Operate Secure SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)
- 218. 113-587-2072 Operate Secure SINGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) Net Control Station (NCS)

- 219. 113-587-2075 Operate Secure SINCGARS Data Operations
- 220. 113-587-2076 Operate Secure SINCGARS Using Control Monitor (CM)
- 221. 113-587-2077 Operate SINCGARS Remote Control Unit (RCU)
- 222. 113-588-4025 Repair Telephone Cable WD-1()/TT or WF-16/U
- 223. 113-594-2005 Install and Operate Switchboard, Telephone, Manual SB-993/GT
- 224. 113-594-2014 Operate Switchboard, Telephone, Manual SB-22/PT
- 225. 113-600-1023 Install Tactical Telephones
- 226. 113-600-3015 Perform Operators PMCS on Tactical Telephone Sets
- 227. 191-377-5250 Handle Enemy Personnel and Equipment
- 228. 551-721-1342 Maintain the Cooling System on an M998-Series Vehicle
- 229. 551-721-1343 Maintain the Fuel System on an M998-Series Vehicle
- 230. 551-721-1344 Maintain the Transmission System on an M998-Series Vehicle
- 231. 551-721-1345 Start an M998-Series Vehicle Using Auxiliary Power
- 232. 551-721-1346 Drive an M998-Series Vehicle
- 233. 551-721-1347 Maintain the Air Cleaner System on an M998-Series Vehicle
- 234. 551-721-1348 Maintain the Steering System on an M998-Series Vehicle
- 235. 551-721-1349 Maintain the Engine on an M998-Series Vehicle
- 236. 551-721-1350 Maintain the Brake System on an M998-Series Vehicle
- 237. 551-721-1351 Maintain the Battery System on an M998-Series Vehicle

STP 21-24-SMCT, Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks,
Skill Levels 2-4 (1 Oct 92)

SKILL LEVEL 2

1. 031-503-2020 Use and Perform Operator Maintenance on the IM93 or IM147 Dosimeter and PP1578-Series Charger
2. 031-503-3001 Use M256 or M256A1 Chemical Agent Detector Kit
3. 031-503-2001 Use M256 or M256A1 Chemical Agent Detector Kit
4. 031-503-3012 Supervise the Fitting of Protective Masks
5. 031-503-3013 Use and Perform Operator Maintenance on the IM174-Series Radiacmeter
6. 031-503-4004 Prepare and Submit NBC 4 Reports
7. 051-193-1013 Neutralize Booby Traps
8. 061-283-1002 Locate a Target by Grid Coordinates
9. 061-283-6003 Adjust Indirect Fire
10. 071-326-0600 Use Visual Signaling Techniques While Dismounted
11. 071-326-5704 Supervise Construction of a Fighting Position
12. 071-331-0802 Process Enemy Personnel and Equipment
13. 071-730-0001 Emplace Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
14. 071-730-0002 Recover Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
15. 071-326-0515 Select a Movement Route Using a Map
16. 071-329-1006 Navigate From One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted
17. 071-329-1009 Convert Azimuths
18. 071-329-1011 Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass
19. 071-329-1019 Use a Map Overlay
20. 071-329-1004 Determine the Elevation of a Point on the Ground Using a Map
21. 071-329-1014 Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Intersection

- 22. 071-329-1015 Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Resection
- 23. 071-510-0001 Determine Azimuths Using a Protractor
- 24. 071-510-0002 Compute Back Azimuths
- 25. 081-831-0101 Request Medical Evacuation
- 26. 113-573-8006 Use an Automated Communications- Electronic Operations Instruction (CEOI)
- 27. 441-091-1040 Visually Identify Threat Aircraft
- 28. 031-503-2004 Prepare and Submit NBC 4 Reports
- 29. 031-503-2012 Supervise the Fitting of Protective Masks
- 30. 031-503-2013 Use and Perform Operator Maintenance on the IM174-Series Radiacmeter
- 31. 031-503-2022 Use and Maintain the AN/VDR-2 Radiac Set
- 32. 051-192-1119 Install US Antihandling Devices on AT Mines
- 33. 051-192-1120 Remove US Antihandling Devices on AT Mines
- 34. 051-193-1002 Construct a Nonelectric Initiating/ Detonating Assembly
- 35. 051-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically
- 36. 051-193-1004 Construct an Electric Initiating/ Detonating Assembly
- 37. 051-193-1005 Prime Explosives Electrically
- 38. 051-193-1007 Prime Explosives with Detonating Cord
- 39. 051-193-1011 Install Dual Firing Systems
- 40. 051-193-2030 Clear a Misfire
- 41. 061-283-1004 Locate a Target by Shift from a Known Point
- 42. 071-022-0004 Unload a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
- 43. 071-022-0005 Correct Malfunctions of a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
- 44. 071-022-0008 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 on a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun

- 45. 071-022-0009 Dismount a Night Vision AN/TVS-5 from a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
- 46. 071-022-0015 Prepare a Range Card for a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
- 47. 071-030-0002 Prepare a Range Card for an MK19 Machine Gun
- 48. 071-030-0003 Zero an MK19 Machine Gun
- 49. 071-030-0004 Engage Targets with an MK19 Machine Gun
- 50. 071-030-0005 Load an MK19 Machine Gun
- 51. 071-030-0006 Unload an MK19 Machine Gun
- 52. 071-030-0008 Correct Malfunctions of an MK19 Machine Gun
- 53. 071-030-0016 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 on an MK19 Machine Gun
- 54. 071-030-0017 Dismount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 from an MK19 Machine Gun
- 55. 071-030-0018 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 to an MK19 Machine Gun
- 56. 071-030-0019 Engage Targets with an MK19 Machine Gun Using a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5
- 57. 071-313-3452 Zero a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
- 58. 071-317-3324 Select a Fighting Position for an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon
- 59. 071-315-0056 Engage Targets with a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun Using a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5
- 60. 071-315-2317 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 to a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
- 61. 071-326-5920 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Fire Team
- 62. 071-334-4001 Guide a Helicopter to a Landing Point
- 63. 071-332-5051 Post a Daily Staff Journal
- 64. 071-410-0016 Conduct Occupation of an Overwatch Position
- 65. 071-600-0005 Enforce Preventive Medicine
- 66. 071-710-0004 Control Use of Night Vision Devices

- 67. 071-720-0009 Conduct a Local Security Patrol
- 68. 071-730-0003 Install a Platoon Early Warning System AN/TRS-2
- 69. 071-930-0004 Prepare an MCS for Operations
- 70. 071-930-0005 Prepare an MCS for Displacement
- 71. 071-930-0006 Maintain an MCS
- 72. 101-515-1900 Perform Search, Recovery, Evacuation and/or Burial of Remains
- 73. 113-572-6005 Write a United States Message Text Form at (USMTF) Message
- 74. 121-030-3534 Report Casualties
- 75. 301-348-6001 Protect Classified Information and Material
- 76. 441-091-1040 Visually Identify Threat Aircraft

SKILL LEVEL 3

- 1. 031-503-3009 Lead MOPP Gear Exchange
- 2. 031-503-3002 Conduct Unmasking Procedures
- 3. 031-503-3004 Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area
- 4. 031-503-3005 Prepare and Submit NBC 1 Reports
- 5. 031-503-3007 Direct Preparation for NBC Attack
- 6. 031-503-3008 Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture
- 7. 031-503-3006 Supervise Radiation Monitoring
- 8. 071-430-0003 Consolidate a Squad Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense
- 9. 071-430-0004 Reorganize a Squad Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense
- 10. 071-326-5705 Establish an Observation Point
- 11. 071-430-0002 Conduct a Defense by a Squad
- 12. 071-331-0820 Analyze Terrain
- 13. 051-195-3005 Direct Construction of Non-Explosive Antivehicular Obstacles

14. 071-326-0608 Use Visual Signalling Techniques While Mounted
15. 071-326-3001 Direct a Driver Over a Terrain Route
16. 071-326-3002 React to Indirect Fire While Mounted
17. 071-326-3006 Conduct the Maneuver of a Mechanized (M113) Squad
18. 071-326-5502 Issue a Fragmentary Order
19. 071-326-5503 Issue a Warning Order
20. 071-326-5610 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Squad
21. 071-331-0015 Conduct a Point Ambush by a Squad
22. 071-400-0001 Adjust Aerial Fire Support
23. 071-410-0002 React to Direct Fire While Mounted
24. 071-410-0015 Direct Dismount from an M113 Vehicle
25. 071-420-0003 Consolidate a Squad Following Enemy Contact While in the Offense
26. 071-420-0004 Reorganize a Squad Following Enemy Contact While in the Offense
27. 071-440-0003 Conduct an Attack on a Building by a Squad During MOUT
28. 071-440-0006 Conduct a Defense by a Squad During MOUT
29. 071-450-0014 Conduct a Point Antiarmor Ambush by a Squad
30. 071-450-0017 Conduct a Raid
31. 071-450-0038 Construct Field-Expedient Flame Weapons
32. 071-720-0006 Conduct Operation of a Patrol Base
33. 071-730-0006 Enforce Operations Security
34. 071-730-0007 Conduct Employment of Field-Expedient and Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
35. 071-730-0010 Establish a Roadblock
36. 071-810-0001 Maintain an AN/PRC-126 Radio
37. 071-810-0002 Operate an AN/PRC-126 Radio
38. 441-091-3001 Direct Unit Air Defense

SKILL LEVEL 4

1. 031-503-4003 Control Unit Radiation Exposure
2. 071-430-0007 Consolidate a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense
3. 071-430-0008 Reorganize a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense
4. 071-326-5775 Coordinate With an Adjacent Platoon
5. 071-430-0006 Conduct a Defense by a Platoon
6. 071-098-0004 Conduct the Breach of a Minefield
7. 071-400-0003 Prepare Personnel and Equipment for Air Assault
8. 071-326-3013 Conduct a Tactical Road March
9. 071-410-0003 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Mechanized (M113) Platoon While Mounted
10. 071-410-0004 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Mechanized (M113) Platoon While Dismounted
11. 071-410-0013 Prepare a Situation Report
12. 071-420-0001 Consolidate a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Offense
13. 071-420-0002 Reorganize a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Offense
14. 071-420-0006 Conduct the Maneuver of a Mechanized (M113) Platoon
15. 071-420-0021 Conduct a Movement to Contact by a Platoon
16. 071-420-0022 Conduct a Mounted Assault by a Platoon
17. 071-420-0023 Conduct an Attack by a Platoon
18. 071-326-5832 Conduct a Disengagement by a Platoon While Under Enemy Pressure
19. 071-440-0009 Conduct a Defense by a Platoon During MOUT
20. 071-440-0012 Conduct an Attack by a Platoon During MOUT
21. 071-450-0027 Conduct a Relief
22. 071-450-0030 Conduct a Passage of Lines

- | | | |
|-----|--------------|--|
| 23. | 071-450-0035 | Conduct an Area Ambush by a Platoon |
| 24. | 071-450-0036 | Conduct an Antiarmor Area Ambush by a Platoon |
| 25. | 071-450-0037 | Direct Employment of Smoke |
| 26. | 101-521-4051 | Request Supplies and Logistical Services |
| 27. | 301-337-6001 | Process Captured Materiel |
| 28. | 071-620-0001 | Plan for Decontamination Operations |
| 29. | 071-710-0006 | Plan Use of Night Vision Devices |
| 30. | 071-326-5805 | Conduct a Route Reconnaissance Mission |
| 31. | 071-730-0004 | Plan Installation of a Platoon Early Warning System AN/TRS-2 |
| 32. | 071-332-5000 | Prepare an Operation Overlay |
| 33. | 071-332-5021 | Prepare a Situation Map |
| 34. | 071-332-5031 | Prepare a Road Movement Table |
| 35. | 071-900-0001 | Prepare an Operation Plan |
| 36. | 071-900-0003 | Prepare a Battalion Operation Order |
| 37. | 071-900-0004 | Establish a Tactical Operations Center |
| 38. | 071-900-0005 | Conduct Displacement of a Tactical Operations Center |
| 39. | 551-721-3359 | Prepare a Strip Map |
| 40. | 071-332-5034 | Extract Information from a Route Reconnaissance Report |
| 41. | 071-332-5002 | Prepare a Battalion Fragmentary Order |
| 42. | 071-332-5004 | Prepare a Battalion Warning Order |
| 43. | 071-332-5020 | Post an S3 Workbook |
| 44. | 071-332-5022 | Prepare a Battalion Situation Report (SITREP) |
| 45. | 071-940-0002 | Conduct Resupply of a Platoon |

STP 7-11BCHM14-SM-TG, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide,
MOS 11B, 11C, 11H, and 11M Infantry,
Skill Levels 1/2/3/4 (30 September 1988)

MOS 11B

SKILL LEVEL 1

1. 031-507-1021 Mark NBC Contaminated Area
2. 031-507-1022 Decontaminate Equipment Using M13
Decontaminating Apparatus, Portable
3. 031-503-1002 Decontaminate Equipment Using the ABC M11
Decontaminating Apparatus
4. 051-192-1002 Install/Remove the M16A1 Antipersonnel Mine
5. 051-192-1008 Install/Remove the M21 Antitank Mine
6. 051-192-1021 Locate Mines by Visual Means
7. 071-098-0001 Recover a Mechanical Ambush
8. 071-098-0002 Install a Mechanical Ambush
9. 071-410-0001 Perform Self-Extraction From a Minefield
10. 071-002-0001 Maintain a Caliber .45 Pistol
11. 071-002-0005 Unload a Caliber .45 Pistol
12. 071-004-0001 Maintain an M9 Pistol
13. 071-004-0003 Load an M9 Pistol
14. 071-010-0006 Engage Targets With an M249 Machine Gun
15. 071-312-4004 Lay an M249 Machine Gun Using Field Expedients
16. 071-312-4025 Maintain an M249 Machine Gun
17. 071-312-4027 Load an M249 Machine Gun
18. 071-312-4030 Zero an M249 Machine Gun
19. 071-311-2006 Construct Field-Expedient Firing Aids for an
M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
20. 071-315-2307 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 to an M16A1
or M16A2 Rifle
21. 071-315-2308 Engage Targets With an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
Using a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4

- 22. 071-032-0006 Construct Field-Expedient Firing Aids for an M203 Grenade Launcher
- 23. 071-311-2103 Zero an M203 Grenade Launcher
- 24. 071-311-2125 Maintain an M203 Grenade Launcher
- 25. 071-315-2351 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 to an M203 Grenade Launcher
- 26. 071-315-2352 Engage Targets With an M203 Grenade Launcher Using a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4
- 27. 071-052-0003 Construct a Fighting Position for an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon
- 28. 071-052-0004 Restore an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon to Carrying Configuration
- 29. 071-052-0005 Operate a Night Vision Sight AN/TAS-5
- 30. 071-052-0006 Engage Targets With an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon
- 31. 071-317-3302 Prepare an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon for Firing
- 32. 071-317-3306 Perform Misfire Procedures on an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon
- 33. 071-312-3003 Lay an M60 Machine Gun Using Field Expedients
- 34. 071-312-3004 Construct a Fighting Position for an M60 Machine Gun
- 35. 071-312-3007 Prepare a Range Card for an M60 Machine Gun
- 36. 071-312-3025 Maintain an M60 Machine Gun
- 37. 071-312-3030 Zero an M60 Machine Gun
- 38. 071-315-0008 Engage Targets With an M60 Machine Gun Using a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4
- 39. 071-315-2313 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 to an M60 Machine Gun
- 40. 071-022-0001 Maintain a Caliber .50 Machine Gun
- 41. 071-315-0003 Operate a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4
- 42. 071-315-0030 Operate Night Vision Goggles AN/PVS-5

- 43. 071-315-0091 Operate a Thermal Viewer AN/PAS-7
- 44. 071-331-0808 Identify Threat Weapons
- 45. 071-730-0008 Emplace Field-Expedient Early Warning Devices
- 46. 071-328-5303 Practice Preventive Medicine
- 47. 071-317-0000 Prepare an Antiarmor Range Card
- 48. 071-326-0501 Move as a Member of a Fire Team
- 49. 071-326-0541 Perform Movement Techniques During MOUT
- 50. 071-326-0550 Prepare Positions for Individual and Crew-Served Weapons During MOUT
- 51. 071-326-0557 Select Hasty Firing Positions During MOUT
- 52. 071-334-4001 Guide a Helicopter to a Landing Point
- 53. 071-326-0608 Use Visual Signalling Techniques While Mounted
- 54. 113-588-1088 Install/Recover Communications Wire Lines
- 55. 113-588-1087 Install Hot Loop
- 56. 113-588-3008 Repair Field Wire
- 57. 113-600-2007 Operate Telephone Set TA-312/PT

SKILL LEVEL 2

- 1. 113-573-4003 Encode and Decode Messages Using KTC 600(*) Tactical Operations Code
- 2. 113-573-4006 Use the KTC 1400(*) Numerical Cipher/Authentication System
- 3. 031-503-2008 Use and Maintain M8 or M8A1 Chemical Agent Alarm
- 4. 051-192-1014 Install/Remove US Antihandling Devices on AT Mines
- 5. 051-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically
- 6. 051-193-2030 Clear a Misfire
- 7. 051-193-1025 Neutralize Mines
- 8. 061-283-1004 Locate a Target by Shift From a Known Point

9. 071-022-0003 Operate a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
10. 071-313-3454 Engage Targets With a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
11. 071-313-3455 Set Headspace and Timing on a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
12. 071-331-1000 Prepare the Platoon Early Warning System AN/TRS-2 for Operation
13. 071-331-1002 Monitor the Platoon Early Warning System AN/TRS-2
- ~~14.~~ 071-710-0004 Supervise Use of Night Vision Devices
- ~~15.~~ 071-326-5606 Select an Overwatch Position
- ~~16.~~ 071-410-0019 Control Organic Fires
- ~~17.~~ 071-326-5502 Issue a Fragmentary Order
- ~~18.~~ 071-326-5503 Issue a Warning Order
- ~~19.~~ 071-326-5605 Control Movement of a Fire Team
20. 071-329-1030 Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Mounted

SKILL LEVEL 3

- ~~1.~~ 071-317-3324 Select a Fighting Position for an M47 Medium Antitank Weapon
2. 071-326-3049 Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures for an Operation
3. 071-326-5505 Issue an Oral Operation Order
4. 071-326-5611 Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
5. 071-410-0010 Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance
- ~~6.~~ 071-730-0005 Plan Employment of Field-Expedient and Pyrotechnic Early Warning Devices
- ~~7.~~ 071-331-1003 Installation Planning and Installation of a Platoon Early Warning System AN/TRS-2

SKILL LEVEL 4

- 1. 031-503-4002 Plan and Supervise Positioning M8 or M8A1 Alarm
- 2. 051-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield
- 3. 071-620-0002 Employ NBC Defense Teams
- 4. 071-326-5630 Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
- 5. 071-326-5761 Designate Primary, Alternate, and Supplementary Fighting Positions for Key Weapons
- 6. 071-326-5770 Prepare a Platoon Sector Sketch
- 7. 071-334-4002 Establish a Helicopter Landing Point
- 8. 071-410-0012 Supervise Occupation of an Assembly Area
- 9. 071-410-0020 Plan for Use of Supporting Fires
- 10. 071-420-0005 Conduct the Maneuver of a Platoon
- 11. 071-450-0005 Conduct a Screen by a Platoon
- 12. 071-720-0012 Conduct a Zone Reconnaissance by a Platoon
- 13. 071-720-0015 Conduct an Area Reconnaissance by a Platoon

GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| AAR | after-action review |
| ACE | ammunition, casualty, and equipment |
| ADA | air defense artillery |
| APC | armored personnel carrier |
| AR | Army regulation |
| ARTEP | Army Training and Evaluation Program |
| ATGM | antitank guided missile |
| ATWESS | antitank weapon effect simulator system |
| BOS | battlefield operating system |
| BP | battle position |
| BSA | brigade support area |
| C² | command and control |
| CAS | close air support |
| CATS | Combined Arms Training Strategy |
| cdr | commander |
| COLT | combat observation/lasing team |
| CP | command post |
| CS | combat support |
| CSS | combat service support |
| CTA | common table of allowance |
| DA | Department of the Army |
| DD | Department of Defense |
| DODAC | Department of Defense Ammunition Code |
| DPICM | dual-purpose improved conventional munition |
| DZ | drop zone |
| EA | engagement area |
| EPW | enemy prisoner of war |
| EW | electronic warfare |
| FASCAM | family of scatterable mines |
| 1LT | first lieutenant |
| 1SG | first sergeant |
| FM | field manual |
| FO | forward observer |

| | |
|----------------|--|
| FPF | final protective fire |
| FPL | final protective line |
| FRAGO | fragmentary order |
| FSO | fire support officer |
| FTX | field training exercise |
| GS | general support |
| GTA | graphic training aid |
| HE | high explosive |
| hr | hour |
| HQ | headquarters |
| IAW | in accordance with |
| ind | individual |
| INTSUM | intelligence summary |
| IR | intelligence requirements |
| ITEP | individual training evaluation program |
| KIA | killed in action |
| km | kilometer |
| LAW | light antitank weapon |
| LD | line of departure |
| LZ | landing zone |
| MEDEVAC | medical evacuation |
| METL | mission-essential task list |
| METT-T | mission, enemy, terrain, troops and time available |
| MG | machine gun |
| MILES | multiple integrated laser engagement system |
| min | minute |
| mm | millimeter |
| MOPP | mission-oriented protection posture |
| MOS | military occupational specialty |
| MOUT | military operations on urban terrain |
| MQS | military qualification standards |
| MRE | meal, ready-to-eat |
| MSD | minimum safe distance |
| MTOE | modified table of organization and equipment |
| MTP | mission training plan |

| | |
|----------------|--|
| NBC | nuclear, biological, and chemical |
| NCO | noncommissioned officer |
| NGO | nongovernmental organization |
| NLT | not later than |
| NUCWARN | nuclear warning |
| NVD | night vision device |
| OAKOC | obstacles, avenues of approach, key terrain, observation and fields of fire, and cover and concealment |
| obj | objective |
| OEG | operational exposure guide |
| OP | observation post |
| OPFOR | opposing force |
| OPORD | operation order |
| OPSEC | operations security |
| ORP | objective rally point |
| PDF | principal direction of fire |
| PIR | priority intelligence requirements |
| PMCS | preventive maintenance checks and services |
| POL | petroleum, oils, and lubricants |
| POV | private organization |
| PZ | pickup zone |
| R&R | rest and recuperation |
| RATELO | radiotelephone operator |
| ROE | rules of engagement |
| RP | release point |
| SALUTE | size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment |
| SDT | self-development test |
| 2LT | second lieutenant |
| SFC | sergeant first class |
| SGT | sergeant |
| SITREP | situation report |
| SM | soldier's manual |
| SMCT | soldier's manual of common task |
| SOI | signal operation instructions |
| SOP | standing operating procedures |
| SP4 | specialist fourth class |
| SSG | staff sergeant |
| STP | soldier's training publication |
| STRAC | Standards in Training Commission |

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| STX | situational training exercise |
| T&EO | training and evaluation outline |
| TC | training circular |
| TG | trainer's guide |
| TM | technical manual |
| TOC | tactical operations center |
| TOE | table of organization and equipment |
| TOT | time on target |
| TRP | target reference point |
| US | United States |
| veh | vehicle |
| WIA | wounded in action |
| WO | warning order |
| XO | executive officer |

REFERENCES

DOCUMENTS NEEDED

These documents must be available to the intended users of this publication.

- *AR 40-5. Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990.
- *AR 350-41. Training in Units. 19 March 1993.
- *AR 385-62. Regulations for Firing Guided Missiles and Heavy Rockets for Training, Target Practice and Combat. 5 January 1977.
- *AR 385-63. Policies and Procedures for Firing Ammunition for Training, Target Practice and Combat. 15 October 1983.
- *ARTEP 7-8-DRILL. Battle Drills for the Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 3 November 1993.
- *ARTEP 7-10-MTP. Mission Training Plan for the Infantry Rifle Company. 3 October 1988.
- *ARTEP 7-20-MTP. Mission Training Plan for the Infantry Battalion. 27 December 1988.
- *ARTEP 71-2-MTP. Mission Training Plan for the Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force. 3 October 1988.
- *CTA 50-900. Clothing and Individual Equipment. 1 August 1990.
- *DA Form 1155. Witness Statement on Individual. June 1966.
- *DA Form 1156. Casualty Feeder Report. June 1966.
- *DA Form 1355-1-R. Hasty Protective Minefield Record (LRA). July 1975.
- *DA Pamphlet 350-38. Training Standards in Weapon Training. February 1993.
- *DD Form 1380. US Field Medical Card. 1 June 1962.
- *FM 3-3. Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.

*These were also sources used to develop this publication.

- *FM 3-4. NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.
- *FM 3-5. NBC Decontamination. 23 July 1992.
- *FM 5-34. Engineer Field Data. 14 September 1987.
- *FM 3-100. NBC Defense Chemical Warfare, Smoke, and Flame Operations. 23 May 1991.
- *FM 5-102. Countermobility. 14 March 1983.
- *FM 7-7. The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985.
- *FM 7-7J. The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 7 May 1993.
- *FM 7-8. The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.
- *FM 7-10. The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.
- *FM 7-20. The Infantry Battalion. 6 April 1992.
- *FM 7-92. The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad (Airborne, Air Assault, and Light Infantry). 23 December 1992.
- *FM 7-98. Operations in a Low-Intensity Conflict. 19 October 1992.
- *FM 8-10-6. Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations Tactical, Techniques, and Procedures. 31 October 1991.
- *FM 19-15. Civil Disturbances. 25 November 1985.
- *FM 19-40. Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.
- *FM 21-10. Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 22 November 1988.
- *FM 21-11. First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988.
- *FM 21-18. Foot Marches. 1 June 1990.
- *FM 21-60. Visual Signals. 30 September 1987.

*These were also sources used to develop this publication.

- *FM 23-9. M16A1 Rifle and Rifle Marksmanship.
3 July 1989.
- *FM 23-14.M249 Light Machine Gun in the Automatic Role.
26 January 1994.
- *FM 23-23. Antipersonnel Mine M18A1 and M18 (Claymore).
6 January 1966.
- *FM 23-25. Launcher and Cartridge, 84-mm, M136 (AT4),
HEAT. 22 November 1988.
- *FM 23-30. Grenades and Pyrotechnic Signals.
27 December 1988.
- *FM 23-31. 40-mm Grenade Launchers M203 and M79.
1 May 1972.
- *FM 23-33. 66-mm HEAT Rocket, M72A1, M72A2
(Light Antitank Weapon). 20 April 1979.
- *FM 23-67. Machinegun, 7.62-mm, M60. 29 February 1984.
- *FM 25-4. How to Conduct Training Exercises.
10 September 1984.
- *FM 25-5. Training for Mobilization and War.
25 January 1985.
- *FM 25-100. Training the Force. 15 November 1988.
- *FM 25-101. Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990.
- *FM 71-1. Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team.
22 November 1988.
- *FM 90-4. Air Assault Operations. 16 March 1987.
- *FM 90-8. Counterguerrilla Operations. 29 August 1986.
- *FM 90-10-1. An Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-up
Areas. 12 May 1993.
- *FM 100-5. Operations. 14 June 1993.
- *FM 101-5.Staff Organization and Operations.25 May 1984.
- *FM 101-5-1. Operational Terms and Symbols.
21 October 1985.

*These were also sources used to develop this publication.

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| *STP 7-11II-MQS. | Military Qualification Standards II, Infantry Branch (11), Company Grade Officer's Manual. 16 July 1991. |
| *STP 7-11BCHM14-SM-TG. | Soldier's Manual, Skill Level 1/2/3/4, and Trainer's Guide, CMF 11. 30 September 1988. |
| *STP 21-II-MQS. | Military Qualification Standards II, Manual of Common Tasks for (Lieutenants and Captains). 31 January 1991. |
| *STP 21-1-SMCT. | Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1990. |
| *STP 21-24-SMCT. | Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992. |
| TC 25-6. | Tactical Employment Simulation Training With MILES. 30 September 1982. |
| TC 25-6-1. | MILES Infantry Field Controller's Guide. 21 December 1984. |
| TC 25-6-2. | MILES Armor Field Controller's Guide. 21 December 1984. |
| TC 25-6-3. | MILES Aviation Field Controller's Guide. 23 August 1985. |
| TC 25-6-4. | MILES Air Defense Field Controller's Guide. 23 August 1985. |
| *TC 25-20. | A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews. 30 September 1993. |

READINGS RECOMMENDED

These sources contain relevant supplemental information.

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| DA Pamphlet 350-100. | Extension Training Materials Consolidated MOS Catalog. 5 February 1990. |
| FM 3-50. | Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990. |
| FM 5-100. | Engineer Combat Operations. 22 November 1988. |
| FM 5-103. | Survivability. 10 June 1985. |

*These were also sources used to develop this publication.

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| FM 5-250. | Explosives and Demolitions. 15 June 1992. |
| FM 12-6. | Personnel Doctrine. 23 August 1989. |
| FM 21-26. | Map Reading and Land Navigation. 7 May 1993. |
| FM 21-75. | Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984. |
| FM 21-76. | Survival. 5 June 1992. |
| FM 22-9. | Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations. 21 December 1991. |
| FM 24-1. | Signal Support in the AirLand Battle. 15 October 1990. |
| FM 24-18. | Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987. |
| FM 26-2. | Management of Stress in Army Operations. 29 August 1986. |
| FM 44-8. | Small Unit Self-Defense Against Air Attack. 30 December 1981. |
| FM 90-10 (HTF). | Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT) (How to Fight). 15 August 1979. |
| FM 90-13. | River Crossing Operations. 30 September 1992. |
| FM 90-13-1. | Combined Arms Breaching Operations. 28 February 1991. |
| FM 101-10-1/1. | Staff Officers' Field Manual-Organization, Technical and Logistical Data (Volume 1). 7 October 1987. |